

[12/20/2019, 11:20] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 16

-----NARRATED -----

Two weeks later Thando was back in Cape Town and occupying herself with work and growing her business.. slowly but surely she was getting over Sechaba's death and ready to mingle

Nazo and John were still tight like that, while on the other hand Rudzani was still on the investigation, what was tough to crack was how Simon get to kill his long time business Partner and friend, like what was the motive? His relationship with Nontle was getting serious,they were attending dates now... although at first he didn't know that Simon is her father but one night he got to know through dinner when Nontle was worried that Simon looked stressed out about something he's even losing weight...then Rudzani planted a bug on Nontle's phone without knowing...

On the other hand, Gugu was getting back on her feet, Sechaba's ghost gave her a little break after that trip to the powerful sangoma...

-----THANDO-----

I just had a long day at work , what I was looking forward to was taking the longest shower ever, get in my pyjamas,drink my wine and sleep.

I got in the house and took off my shoes, then my phone rang with an unrecognized number..I frowned before answering before I was wondering who's calling me this night...

Me:hello

Voice: hi, This is Isaac Kings your father's...

Me: Isaac.. what can I do for you this late?

Isaac: well your father is out of the country dealing with some business and now your brother Chad is coming to South Africa...the moment he heard he had an older sister he bought a plane ticket excited to meet u

I blushed at that..I've always wanted a sibling...

Me:ohw that's so sweet.. I can't wait to meet him

Isaac: I'm sure u don't..so now he's coming straight to you saying he want to spend time with you getting to know you...

Me':coming here?

Isaac: yes and I'm coming with him..your father asked me to look after you guys...

Me: oh..if I may ask how long is he going to be here for?

Isaac: I'm not sure..but I guess a week.. because he has studies that side and he did a pretty long begging before your dad agreed for him to come

Me:(sigh) ok then I will prepare u guys a spare room

Isaac: that will be all, sleep well

He said that hanging up I rubbed my head...what am I going to do with two grown up men in the house for a whole week

I mean what do they like to eat? What if this Chad kid is a spoiled brat as they say? Yooh no I'm not ready for this drama for real

I took my phone and called Nazo..maybe she can help me with something especially since she's been living with Isaac I guess she knows him better..with Chad I will just find out

It's rang twice she picked up

Nazo: my daughter

Me: u won't stop with that now will u?

Nazo: hahaha kid I'm dating your father so please... respect me

Me: whatever..I need advice..

Nazo: I'm listening..

Me: so Isaac and Chad are coming over this side and I...

Nazo!: wait wait let me sit up I need to hear this properly..u said Isaac is coming where?

Me:(Rolling my eyes) I said Isaac and Chad

Nazo: I don't care about Chad ok...the interesting part is that your crush is coming to your place oh my God..

She said screaming on my ears..when did I tell this bitch that Isaac is my crush?

Me: so I was wondering if you can help me with things he like to eat and stuff...

Nazo: oh well he doesn't eat a lot ...and his food involve a lot of veggies..he drinks water a lot...and prefer a quite environment

Me:oh my God I wonder how am I going to do this for a whole week! Help me God!

Nazo: don't be dramatic.. I think u might as well go shop for a new lingerie

She said giggling..this woman!

Me: I'm not even going to entertain that crazy idea of yours .. goodnight and thanks for your help

I hung up and went to bed.. tomorrow begins the long week of my life .

-----NONTLE-----

I was seriously worried with how my dad is behaving lately..he's no longer bubbly and cheerful..his eyes are always puffy red and swollen

It's like he's crying.. always locked himself up...doesn't eat with us anymore..let alone take a bath

I decided to go talk to him..I've been trying for a while I hope I'm able to get through him

I knocked in his room and got in..he was seated facing me with his back. Looking outside the window

Me:dad...

He kept quiet..he didn't even turn to look at me...

Me': dad u are scaring us. Especially Zama..dad we still need you...what is it?I'm sure whatever it is we can find a solution to it

Simon: this is beyond anyone helping me my dear...it's a battle of the heart. .

Me: what do u mean by that?

Simon: I hurt someone's who's been close to me dearly...and I can't forgive myself for it

Me:that's sad..can't u two sit up and iron things out?

Simon: the sad part is that he's no more to fix whatever happened between us..he no more to hear me apologising and making up to him

Me:what do u mean he's no more?

Simon : I killed him

I gasped covering my mouth with my hand...

Simon: I killed Sechaba Kgomo in cold blood..the look he gave me when he found me in bed with his woman I will never forget it...it was shock,hurt , disappointment, anger and sorrow

I walked slowly to him..put my phone on bed and hugged him on his shoulders...

Me:father u will be ok ..don't worry yourself about things u can't change...I know u loved him..I've seen how his death hit you..so I'm pretty sure it was an accident

Simon:sure it was..he was aiming to shoot at me and I shot him first..that doesn't make it better though..I shouldn't have killed him..maybe I should have let him killed me

I hugged him placing my head on his...

Me:don't say that dad ..I know this is bad but it's going to be ok...I hope he will forgive you...u just need to do something to show him how sorry u are

-----RUDZANI-----

I smiled alone after listening to the conversation on laptop..this is it...we got him... finally got this bastard...

I took my phone and called kgosi...

Kgosi:Mudau

Me:Kgomo...we got him

Kgosi: are you for real?

Me:yep on tape..I will send you his confession just now

Kgosi: wow my friend I knew u will come through for me .thanks man so what next?

Me': I will go to the judge with everything I have then get a warrant of arrest

Kgosi: yooh I can't believe my brother will finally get justice

Me': yeah man

We talked some more before hanging up .I sent him the recording while storing it safe...I'm just worried about Nontle..I hope when this all is over..she will be able to forgive me and understand why I did it...

-----THANDO -----

I had knocked off earlier today to prepare for my guests and I must say I'm so nervous I don't know why

Everything is spotless clean and ready

I then heard a knock..I did breathing exercises and went to open the door...the younger version of John stood in front of Isaac...when he saw me he ran to me and hugged me for dear life...

Chad: oh my God! I can't believe I have such a gorgeous big sister.. I knew u were beautiful but didn't know this much... come let's take a picture and brag to my homies

He was speaking so fast .I just smiled and posed for the camera.. Isaac stood there shaking his head smiling

Me:hi..

Isaac: hello

Me: please come in

He made his way in..Chad was already on my couch probably sending pictures to his homies as he said

He stood up when we made the way in

Chad: forgive my manners I'm just so happy..I'm Chad George and I'm so happy to see u

Me: Thando, Happy to see u too

Chad: your name sounds nice..what does it mean?.

Me:(chuckling) it's means "Love"

Chad: wow that is so cool

We sat down chatting with Chad I must say he's nothing like me..he talks a lot and non stop but he's such a fun and energetic kid who can't wait to be 18 and be addressed as an adult

Finally we get to eat and Chad asked to go to sleep because of jetleg..

I took the dishes and placed them on the sink to wash them...I felt a someone's presence in the kitchen..I turned to find Isaac so close to me..when I turned our faces were so damn close.. I'm tall by nature but to him I'm short...my heels are helping me

Isaac:I was wondering if maybe I can help with that?.

Me: (clearing my throat) no relax I've got it

Isaac: u sure? How do u even wash dishes wearing heels?

Me: I'm used to them besides I'm planning on taking them off

Isaac: ok..but I'm helping..I insist..go take off those shoes...

I sighed defeated when he took the dish cloth..I left him in there to get my slippers...

Read; share and please COMMENT!!!

And please note that it's now festive season and Christmas is just few days away..I'm with family and friends most of the time so I won't be posting everyday but I will definitely post whenever I get the chance

Enjoy your holidays and be safe my people



[12/30/2019, 09:30] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 17

-----SIMON OKOLIE -----

I've decided to drop the pity party I've been throwing for myself and face up life

My businesses were starting to suffer because of my emotional state..the great OKOLIE doesn't break so I need to on top of my game...

Just as I was busy in my study there was a knock...three cops walked in..I felt my heart beating faster..I kept my composure and looked at them

Me: gentleman..what a pleasure to be visited by you... what did I do to have you in my house so early!?

Detective: Mr Simon OKOLIE you are under arrest for murder of Sechaba Kgomo...

I felt my stomach turn..how did this happen? I kept my straight face as much as I could. I didn't wanna show any signs of weakness...

Me: you are joking right?.I mean it's impossible...

Sergeant: Mr OKOLIE I advice you cooperate with us.. anything you do or say will be used against you in the court of law..you have a right to an attorney,if you can't afford one the state will provide one for you

I felt my anger burn. I yanked my hand from him .

Me': I can walk. And I can afford a lawyer. I don't need your stupid weak lawyers to attend me...

They pushed me out of my house .I bumped into Nontle who looked so shocked .

Nontle: dad what's going on?..

Me: go to my study princess and call my lawyer to meet me in the police station quickly

She nodded and ran past me..as we were going to their cars..I found Gugu cuffed too and crying.. clearly they started with her.

Gugu: Simon.. please I don't want to go to jail . please help me...

Me: shhhh we won't go to jail..I would rather die..

----- ISAAC -----

It's been three days since I've been here and to say I've been so bored would be an understatement

There's nothing much to do here except running around the siblings..George gave a clear instruction that I must watch them everywhere they go...

I'm glad that the siblings are getting along... something I wish I have too but then life happened

I was at the back of the house smoking... I heard footsteps and I looked up,it was the little chap

Chad: so this is where u are hiding...

Me: what makes u think I'm hiding?

Chad: come on..even a little kid can tell..the vibes between you and my sister..u like her don't u?

I just looked at him then continue to smoke

Chad:that scary look of yours doesn't intimidate me..I'm used to it...

Listen..my sister likes you too although she won't admit

Now that it's what I didn't realize..he's right..I've been avoiding her because Everytime I was too close I felt so attached to her and it was so wrong in so many levels..I didn't want to allow it

Me:what makes u think so?

Chad: she asks a lot about you than she realizes...get offended when u ignore her and so on...

Me: mhmm I didn't realize..but Chad..even if that was the case .u know I'm not good for your sister ...

Chad: yeah well I know you have your past and all that..but she dated one of the world criminals in suit .I don't think she will have a problem dating you

Me: well..thing is I'm not sure if I want to date her you know..yes I may be attracted to her..but not interested in her the way she would expect me to be.. I'm not one of those guy who will take her out to dates,buy her chocolate and flowers..hold hands in public..I don't do love..I just fuck..so I don't think Thando is the right person for that

Chad': but how long are you going to be like this..why are you punishing yourself this much?

Me:it is what it is man..look let me go sleep..thanks for the chat

I stood up and went inside the house..I found her in the kitchen..looks like she was from the shower..her silky long hair wet...her smooth skin body wrapped in a towel .her back faced me as she drank water...

I felt my heart do a dance I didn't feel for about five years since my wife passed away..I refused to fall in love or to let another woman have the impact of my heart like she did..but now my heart was betraying me

I couldn't move nor breathe..I just stood there and watched her.. she's so perfect..very beautiful and sexy..but then she deserves better..and I'm not her better

I guess she felt the gaze on her body and turned..she was shocked to see me staring at her like that..I cleared my throat

Me: sorry to bother you I was passing to my bedroom

Thando: no problem..I thought everyone was sleeping and I was here to get water .. goodnight

Me: good night

She walked to her room and I was left alone..fuck I was hard..not just a minor hard on but the huge one..it was even painful! Damn you Thando! Now all I was thinking about was pulling that towel away from her.. pinning her hands above her head and fuck her hard with legs chained on the bed

..but I knew I couldn't do that to her..not because she doesn't deserve it but because she's my boss's daughter and I respect her

I took the car keys and left .I drove to the nearest club around..I ordered scotch and after like 30 minutes or so one of the ladies throw herself at me . great..the way I was so horny I took her to her house immediately

We didn't talk when we got to her house..we just closed the door and I picked her up and placed her against the wall...my cold lips attacked her neck sucking on it while pushing the dress up

She had a body to die for...sexy as fuck. Ass that was firm and round.. damn she was not wearing any panties and bras which turned me on more

I just ripped her dress apart and sucked on her nipples..she moaned loud brushing my hair...

Her legs perfectly wrapped around my waist,I ran my hand on her honey pot and massaged her big swollen clit

She was so damn wet...I pulled out from sucking her nipples and looked at her..her eyes were red and her cheeks burning..she wanted me..she tried to kiss me..I ducked and kissed her cheek pulling her down and taking her to the couch...

I pulled down my pants together with my boxers...I came out with a condom and ripped it open sliding it on my hard cock..the way I was so hard damn I was even angry...

I grabbed her by her tiny waist and made her kneel on the couch giving me the doggy style position

I massaged her pussy blowing it then pushed my hard cock in..she moaned trying to get up..I pressed her down...I started off slowly and when her pussy had accommodated me fully I went in deep and hard..while my thumb was fucking her anal hole...

I felt my body build up but I couldn't come before she did..I knew she was freak for taking all of this hardcore fuck like a boss so I owed her a cum at least

I saw her legs vibrating..I picked her up turning her around Fucked her hard on my arms with her body hanging on the air..legs wrapped around me...she screamed And I felt her juices pouring my dick covering the condom white...shortly after her I released too

I groaned and thrust deep one last time pulling out then let her on the couch

I walked around looking the bathroom and I found it...I took off the condom checking if there was any burst.. luckily it was still tact..I flushed it..washed my dick and wiped myself...

I got out and saw her passed out on the couch with her legs wide open...I grabbed the cushion next to her and covered her body..I searched inside her hand back and saw a diary..I took one page and wrote " that was amazing.. thanks" and left it next to her

I put on my pants and walked away driving to Thando's house feeling a bit better..it was around 3 am when I arrived..I knew I didn't have much time to sleep so I used it

----- THANDO -----

I woke up and prepared for work...I didn't see Isaac this morning.. maybe he is avoiding me after last night...only if she knew I didn't mind

I wish I could just sit him down and talk to him..like get to know him a bit..but he's completely purposely ignoring me. .maybe he's not attracted to me the way I am to him

I surely miss Sechaba,may his soul rest in peace..I finished with breakfast and took my things to the car..still Isaac was no where in sight

This wasn't like him..I panicked a little..what if he's dead .I got out of the car and went back to the house..knocked one in his room and there was no response..I knocked again and opened...

Jesus Christ Lord help me..my eyes were not ready for what I saw ...

He was but naked from the shower..he looked horrible like he was dying of hangover or something...he didn't seem bothered that he was naked and I was in the room...

Isaac: can I help you?

That came out..rather..mhmm..cold and annoyed

Me: uhm..no I'm sorry I just wanted to check if you are ok..

He just chuckled and took her underwear and got dressed in it then walked to me . Jesus save me..he was smelling so damn good..I just wanted to lay on that big chest and inhale his cologne..he was an inch close to me .very close if I must say...tall even though I was on my heels..

Isaac:now that you have seen that I am ok can you leave so that I can get dressed?

He said that in a most seductive way ever..I felt my panties getting wet..thank God I'm always on panty liners..I just cleared my throat and turned back ..

He grabbed my hand and brought me closer to him a bit rough and that was such a huge turn on

We stared at each other's eyes..he then let me go

Isaac: have a great day at work

Fuck! The way he pulled me to him I thought we were going to have some serious fucking sessions here and now but hey.. Isaac is just Isaac

I left the room feeling hit and cold at the same time...I ignored Chad's greetings and ran to the car driving away as fast as I could

I got to work some of the girls were in..I greeted them and walked to my office..I closed the door and quickly ran to the bathroom and helped myself..don't judge me I was too horny so I wasn't going to be able to concentrate..

When I was done I cleaned myself and returned to my office and started with work...an hour late...Sphelele walked in

She was late and that's so not like her..she's very punctual and take her job and work serious.. she's one of the girls im close with.. besides Nazo..I consider her as a friend too

Me: Sphe u are late ..

Sphe: sorry boss lady it was one of those night...I went clubbing and things turn out of hand

Me: u went clubbing on a Wednesday Sphe like really?

Sphe: I needed a distraction and some piece of mind....

Me: what's troubling you?

Sphe: husband..but I would rather not go into details

Well she was married at the age of 24..I chose not to ask and respect her privacy..but then I saw red marks on her neck...she's light like me so it's easy to spot them

Me: I don't mean kuzifaka ezindabeni zakho but what happened to your neck? You are even walking funny

Sphe: promise you won't judge?

Me: have I ever judged you before?

Sphe:no...well eix yesterday I went to the club to distress..then I met this guy who was alone .he was smoking flames..damn I have never seen such a handsome man..one thing led to another and I took him to my house he fucked me so damn good..friend I've never been so satisfied like that in a while...he was a bit rough and hard but he made me come

Lucky bastard.. it's been a whole two months with no dick I'm sure spider webs are starting the build up now ...well I don't blame Sphe for whoring around...her husband is one of those big man..I wonder if liyavuka nah..I still don't get it why Sphe married him in the first place..but then it's not only about sex right.?

We continue chatting some more about work and her mystery man...

-----NARRATED -----

SOMEWHERE IN AN UNKNOWN BEAUTIFUL PLACE...

TWO MEN WERE IN A DESSERTED WAREHOUSE TALKING

Guy1: nigga you need to go back .I think it's time now

Guy2: no..me going back will ruin the mission to punish those idiots

Guy1: but dude if you continue to stay here..you may loose out one thing that matters the most to you..and believe me when I say it might be too late to claim it back..so get your ass back and deal with this once and for all

The second guy scratched his head in frustration

Guy2: this guy is running my plans and the longer I stay the longer shit get real

Guy1: exactly!

Guy2: fuck!! Get me the earliest flight back

Guy1: where are u going to crash at?

Guy2: Durban..that's the least place im expected to be seen at

Guy1 :on it..

Apologies for the delay yesterday...I will make it up to you with another insert later on

For now..read this one and please comment ..let me know what you think of this episode..the entire of it

Thank you 

[12/30/2019, 14:19] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 17

-----EDWARD ERASMUS-----

I had just gotten off from my longest flight ever and I was resting in my hotel room...

Durban is a hot place yet so beautiful..my room was so big and fit for a king...

The lady from reception put my bags in the room..I thanked her and give her the tip closing the door behind her...

I throw myself on the bed and rested...it's been three months sit I set my foot back in South Africa

My mind travels back where everything changed...I remember coming from Cape Town going to my house in Sandton..I remember the urge in me that told me to drive to Brayston...I remember seeing Gugu's car and Simon's

But what I saw when getting on my bedroom shocked me to the core..Simon took me in when I was 17 years old..new and stupid at Johannesburg

He was the father yet my mentor who taught me everything I needed to know...helped me establish my own legacy..he was one of the men I considered dying for and having my back...even when he was arrested..my girlfriend was the one who took him out using her I.T skills

I remember I was so angry.. ready to splush his skull open with the bullet but he fired first...I touched my heart where he looted three shorts...

I got up and stared at the mirror with red eyes as memories flashed back.

I died there...I saw Gugu shocked to see my body laying in a pool of blood

Simon and his thugs crooked a plan for my death...I remember seeing Thando and my family breaking down at the cemetery when my coffin was being laid to rest ..I couldn't do anything..only my spirit was roaming around but my body was getting six feet under

Later that day I was in front of the devil .of course there was no way I was going to heaven with the life I was living... the devil offered me a new chance to live..a second chance to revenge my death...to make those who hurt me pay..in exchange he needed me to be on of his loyal members who died on a terrific car accident same day... Edward Erasmus

In short; Edward lives in Sechaba's body...his spirit is resting in peace..I was dug up ..when my coffin open..there were people who were ready for me. Everything was restored to me.. Spirits were exchanged... Edward's spirit got in Sechaba's body while Sechaba's went to Edward's

Because I was badly shot..I have to be taken to another country for treatment and surgery that was a success after two weeks

I must say Edward is not much different to Sechaba except that he really doesn't tolerate bullshit..he acts now than Sechaba's

Edward doesn't forgive..he hates betrayal and he's evil as fuck

He is Rich as fuck than Sechaba and his business partners combined..in short he's an illuminati..unlike Sechaba, Edward runs a very successful music record label and a studio for film makers ...he's into many things u can think of

As much he's Edward, his body structure is the one of Sechaba's...made few changes on his face during surgery..we must say he looks younger and hot to be 33,still dark and tall...

A part of Sechaba's memory was left in him...just to torment Simon and Gugu plus the other people who crossed him...

The memory that's very important to him is the one he shared with Thando..he thinks about her everyday ..and he's aware of what she does,when and with whom

He knew he was going to come back to her someday after dealing with these two but now there was a guy posing as a threat...he needed to Mark and protect his territory before it was too late...

Luckily for me, Edward has always been a workaholic so he didn't have a wife or girlfriend... hooking up with Thando won't be a problem..he just need to explain the basics to her hoping she will understand then the rest will be fine

This is Edward Erasmus,a new era of Sechaba kgomo..

----- THANDO -----

I was driving my brother and Isaac to the airport as their visiting period was over

I was heartbroken that they were leaving, both of them..I've grown fond of them..well I don't know much about Isaac because he's cold as an ice...

I thought after seeing his naked self he will make a move but he kept his distance as far as possible from me..it's hurt that I was starting to like him but yena ngathi akazingeni nje

I drop them off and hug them..I drove back to the office busy wiping my tears..i will miss Chad..hes such a free spirited person...

Just as I was getting off my car at work..my phone rang..I stood outside my car and answered

Me: hello

Rudzani: hey Thando it's Mudau here

Me: oh Ruu hi..

Rudzani: I'm calling to let you know that the people who murdered Sechaba has been found and arrested...they are waiting to appear before court tomorrow for bail hearing

I felt hot tears run my face.. finally justice will be served for my man

Me:who are they?

Rudzani: Gugu and Simon

I nearly dropped my phone...ok I can agree with Gugu...but Simon? No!! That guy was way too close to Sechaba to do that...

Me: no! Are you serious?

Rudzani:I was hired by kgosi to do the investigation...we have Mr Okolie's confession on tape!

Me: oh my God! What is this world coming to? Simon was like a father to him Ruu!

Rudzani:I know hey...I was informing you in case you will like to attend

Me: thanks for letting me know..I will let you know what I decide

Rudzani: ok

He hung up and I was shocked I feel constipated as if I can just throw up

Then suddenly two gentlemen appeared next to me...

Guy 1: excuse miss

Me: yes?

Guy2: we would like you to come with us to the car..please don't create a scene

Me: (frowning) why the hell for? And who are u guys?

Guy1: mam please co-operate with us..we won't harm you...

Me: how do I trust you?

Guy2: I guess it's the risk u are will have to take

The other guy asked for my car keys..when I hesitate he snatched them from me..opened my car..took my hand bag and my laptop back

He locked the car and we walked to theirs...they opened the door and got in me...I met two other men at the front..the car had tinted black windows..I couldn't see a thing outside..there was an air conditioning and heater ,tv and small refrigerator that contained lot of my favorite junk food and drinks

Guy3: make yourself comfortable and eat anything you feel like eating in here because the journey is really going to be long

It's finally clicked in me! I'm being kidnapped! But this kidnap Is sweet and soft...who's behind this?

-----Simon -----

I was pacing up and down with frustration.. I couldn't believe that this was happening! My lawyer hasn't come to see me and tomorrow I'm appearing before the magistrate

I'm going to fire them..all of them and Sue their lazy stupid asses..such negligence is not allowed

The door opened in one of the rooms where I was waiting...one tall guy walked in carrying a briefcase, dressed like a lawyer..the cop that was escorting him left locking us in

Edward: I'm sorry I'm late

Me:(frowning,I have never met this guy before,he's definitely not my lawyer) who are you?

Edward:your lawyer of course..now sit down so that we can get started

There was something about how he talked..his voice was polite yet it commanded so much respect

I sat down looking at him from head to toe and couldn't shake the feeling that he looked like someone I know

Edward: great..see this is easy...I need you to sign over your 75% shares of the oil business you own...I need another 35% share of the mine u own in Pretoria..I will discuss the rest when u are out..

He said not even looking at me while handing me the papers..is he crazy?

Me: are u insane? Why should I give you 75% shares of the company I owned with Sechaba?

Edward: because I'm Sechaba' and now I'm here to collect..I told you I will come back to collect didn't I?

I felt the back of my hair Shrink!now suddenly the cold blood on his eyes showed up

Me:you..u are Sechaba?how?you are dead...

Edward:I used to admire you thinking that u are smart but u are very stupid if you seriously think that I'm dead...Simon...I will collect one by one for every pain you put me through until you are left with nothing..then you will have no option than to kill yourself..as for your girlfriend..I will send her straight to the mental house

I felt my intestines growl..the more he spoke the more he sounded like Sechaba..but there was something different about him...

Me:how did this happen? How do I know you are him?

He stood up and came to me..he knelt down because he was tall...

Edward: take a close look from where my hair start ...u see that cut..it is where the surgery was done

Look at my lower jaw? See that? I had to be transformed to be Edward in Sechaba's body...his spirit might have been dead and resting in peace but his body is definitely up and running... Edward is out to make everyone who ever doubled crossed him pay...

He stood up and took off his suit followed by the shirt...then the tattoos I know were visible..even the bullets scars in his body...the recent tattoo for his daughter Lesedi that he did immediately after he reunited with Thando..now I was convinced that it was his body

Me:I believe you

Edward: great..now what's going to be...u sign or I let you rot you in here?

I swallowed hard as I watched him getting dressed..I took the pen and read the paperwork again

-----NARRATED -----

Thando was now I Edward's huge bedroom suite..the journey to Durban was very long..they arrived late... Edward was in joburg dealing with Simon

Thando woke up the following day and realized he's in Durban..he took a shower and wore the black track pants that was laid on bed for her..

She was tired of pacing up and down..her personal handbag was not with her

She wanted to make a phone call and let her dad or Isaac know that she's been kidnapped...

-----Thando -----

The door opened and the female hotel staff got in and stood by the door

Lady:good morning mam..I trust that you have slept well and enjoyed your stay with us ..Mr Edward has asked that you join him for breakfast in the roof top

I've been hearing about this Edward guy since I was taken from my work place..it's high time I meet him

I followed the lady as we took the lift to the roof top

I must say the view of Durban is so beautiful here..the sea breeze and and everything..the layout was to die for .the lady dropped me and turned back

This guy had his back faced on me and his hands on his pockets looking at the sea down

I cleared my throat to get him to look my way .he slowly turned...ngisho noma kungathiwa izinto ziyafana!!!

He was on his white golf t-shirt that showed off the muscles and tattoos I knew very well...

Me: Sechaba?

Edward:in the flesh

Me: no freaking way! You are dead!

Edward:if I'm dead why are you seeing me?

He made his way closer to me I kept moving back till the wall stopped me..he was right in front of

Edward:touch me..im alive munchie

That's the nickname Sechaba liked to use on me..I slowly raised my shaking hand to touch his arms..I've heard that ghosts are cold or hot..he appeared to be normal

Although he looked like Sechaba but there was a lot of changes in his face.. including his hair cut. But he looked good

Me:I was told Edward is the one kidnapped me from Cape Town?

Edward: I'm Edward..sit down and enjoy breakfast because what I'm about to tell you....u won't be able to digest it on a empty stomach

I looked at him...am I dreaming? What the hell is wrong with me! People are appearing before the magistrate probably now for his death and he's here playing gentleman

Edward: mama ka Lesedi hlala phansi sidle tuu sthandwa sam

Oh my God it's really him! Now I felt tears building up...if he's really alive why did. He put me through so much trauma?! I couldn't contain the tears and sobs..he quickly got me and sat me down hugging me

Luckily this place was booked for him only..I would have attracted eyes with my sobs ..

Edward:baby don't cry. I know my actions weren't desirable but I had no choice...other than Simon and Gugu, there were other people who wanted me dead...

Please eat..I will tell you everything that you need to know

I wiped my tears and forced my self to eat...when we were done he took my hand back to his room

I sat on the bed while he went to the window with his back faced me again as he narrated everything to me..I didn't believe it..it was a lot to digest in and I didn't know what to make of it

Me: I don't understand...who are you?

Edward: in Edward Erasmus...living in Sechaba's body

Me: where is Sechaba?

Edward: his spirit is buried with Edward's body

Me: how is that even possible? How do u know me if your are Edward?

Edward: his body recognize and misses you... Thando this is simple...take me as Edward... Sechaba is dead..let's keep it that way

Me: I don't get this..so u want to tell me that u won't tell your family that you are alive?

Edward: why would I do that? Sechaba's is dead. This infront of you is Edward..I know it's going to take a lot for your to digest it but...Thando..I love you..you are one the reasons that made me to fight to come back..to take the deal...u will love Edward..it's won't be that easy especially in Sechaba's body

Me: what will happen if people recognize you? what do I tell my family and friends?

Edward:we will deal with that when we get to it...just don't say anything to anyone for now.. especially that big mouthed friend of yours

Me: why?

Edward: Because she has a history with Sechaba... secondly she's dating your father..

Your father is a very close friend with Simon...your father double crossed Sechaba... because of you..I will not bother him..

Me: wait . what do you mean when u say ... Nazo and you have history?

Edward: it was long before you came in the picture..they kept it away from you to protect you..don't be mad at them

Nazo slept with Sechaba and kept it from me? Her best friend.. I wonder what else is she keeping away from me

Me:I would like to be alone please to digest all of this

I said getting up to the door

Edward: where are you going to?

Me:to the beach.. can I have my phone? I need to call my dad

Surprisingly he gave me my hand bag..I took my phone and walked out...I ran down to the beach and sat down

What the hell am I supposed to make out of this? Should I date Edward through Sechaba's body or what? I wish there was someone I could talk to about this without sounding crazy or be judged

I immediately thought of Chad,my younger brother who's way too smart for his age...

I dialed his number....

Read,React and comment

See you on the next episode ❤️❤️

[12/30/2019, 18:35] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 19

-----THANDO-----

I have been walking around the beach the whole day .now it was 16:30 in the afternoon..I've been on a phone call with my brother the whole day...young as he is...he's matured and make me feel better

It's feels good that now I have a confidence in him,I trust him because he's my blood and blood don't betray each other

I've bee ignoring Nazo's phone calls the whole day..I don't know how to feel after discovering that she screwed Sechaba and hid it from me

Maybe I'm a bit overacting but we are sisters and best friends don't hide such from each other..we don't date each other's exes

My phone rang and it was dad. I sighed and answered because I don't him to send Isaac my way ..I still need to find a way around this.....

Me: dad

John: my angel are u ok?.

It's felt good to have another man cared for me and to have that father's love you know...I wanted to tell him but then remembered Edward's words that him and Sechaba didn't really get along..they just pretend to be

Me: im fine dad just busy

John: I called your office and they told me you are not in

Me:yes..I'm in Durban.. there's been a new interesting job that came through

John: ok but you are fine?..

Me: yes Dad I'm ok

I was lying but then didn't want to worry him...we spoke briefly and I felt better after that

I took the courage to go back to the hotel..by the time I returned it was 6pm..I was tired and smelling of sun...I needed shower

I got in and found him seated at the couch at corner of the room..his whisky by him.. typing furiously on his laptop

I stood by the door looking at him...he was hot as fuck...he was now on shorts and short sleeve shirt that was unbuttoned the first three buttons, revealing his sexy chest and Lesedi's face as his tattoo...I found my heart melting and my body betraying me ...I wanted him

He felt my gaze and looked up to me ..

Edward: you are back..I was starting to worry

Me : yet you didn't call me

Edward: I was giving you all the time u need to clear your mind

Me: yeah right...don't mind me I need to shower

I just proceed to the bathroom with him looking at me..I took of my clothes and got to the shower

I was enjoying the warm water hitting on my soft skin when I felt the bathroom door opening

He was but naked..his long black dick pointing to the front..I swallowed hard as I felt my clit twitch..he walked in and stood behind me poking my butt with his cock

I wanted to tell him to get out but I missed a man's touch..his touch...that's if he's still remember it since he's now Edward

He touched my shoulders massaging them..I tensed up as I was kinda feeling funny

He kissed my earlobes biting it a bit.. holding my shoulders...he then whispered on my ear

Edward: would you relax? Don't over think it..just take me as I am..I've missed you so much

With that he caress his hand around my boobs..while sucking on my neck with his thick black lips..unwillingly I let out a moan...his hands was playing with my upper body so good...he moved from my neck to the back of my body.. planting kisses on it..I closed my eyes and let pleasure take on...his hands trailed down to my legs..parted them and brushed my pussy...then massaged my clit...he started off slowly then increased his pace fucking me hard with finger I felt my body building up

Edward:(whispering) come for me babe...

I did as he asked..I came hard on his finger...he took it out and licked it..he closed the tapes and carried me out to the bed...lay me down to the bed and knelt down

He devoured my pussy with his mouth and tongue I found myself lost..I don't know where but this was way too good.. whoever it was.. Sechaba or Edward damn was good

I cried tears of joy and came in his mouth ..he licked me clean and got on top of me..he made me look at his eyes

I looked deep..I saw assurance..i saw security..I saw affection..that's all I needed

He pressed his lips on mine making me to taste myself...he french kissed me taking my tongue..this was definitely not Sechaba..he never liked tongue kissing

Edward guided me while his hand was gripping on my hair...I caught up on it and enjoyed it..like he kissed me like never before...I almost came just from kissing

He spread my legs apart and positioned himself on my entrance...he rubbed his big guy and put the tip of it..I moved back,he held me close..he pushed again this time hard...he was in and he groaned cursing ..he moved slowly for a couple of minutes making my pussy walls to be comfortable around his dick..then he banged me hard and fast...again I lost myself...

We both climaxed at the same time..I thought we were done.. thought we will sleep and catch out our breathe but guy had other plans..he flipped me over and I was on top of him

Edward: we are playing catch up right? For the wasted three months...

With that he held my ass squeezing it and made me move for him..I picked up my pace and rode the shit out of him..I was letting all the frustration on his dick..he was spanking my ass every now and then to encourage me

When we came I passed out on his neck with him still inside of me .I felt his sperms going down through my legs...our hearts beats connected

After a moment he spoke

Edward: you good?

Me:yeah

Edward:does that mean you are forgiving me and giving us a chance?

Me:I'm not forgiving you .. there's a lot to digest but we can give it a try

Edward: that's all I'm asking for beautiful...

He kissed my forehead..

Me:does that mean you will never talk to your family? I mean come on..they were devastated

He gently get me off from him and rose up a little looking at me

Edward: I think I've settled this..I can't go back to them..

Me: why?you are here with me njena

Edward: I'm with you as Edward..to them it will require a lot of memory of Sechaba around his family...that's been blocked... rising it up again it will contradict things

Me:how?

Edward: I might want to kill his father for what he did to him . because although Sechaba forgave his dad..that pain never got away ..and remember...I'm the punisher so no

I sighed still confused as fuck

Me: at least Edward fucks me good though

I saw a smile at the corner of his lips forming

Edward: and you were about to give my cake to another man..yazi wena!

Me: so that's why u came back? Ave unomona shame..u made me lost out on a white delicious dick

He laughed..his laughter was beautiful..I think I will like Edward better...he hit me with a pillow

Edward:that's my home..u let anyone in here. They will die instantly

The way he said it was so serious... I looked at him..he kissed my nose...

Edward: so do you like Edward

Me:(smiling) yeah..I think he's the beast in bed..in a sexy way that's. Romantic though

He smiled proudly after I've said so...I rested in his chest

Me: so tell me about Edward..

Edward: what do u want to know?

Me: everything..I need to know what I'm getting myself into

Edward:(sigh) ok..so here's the story...

-----NONTLE -----

I was relieved that dad was out from prison..but instead of being happy he was just sad and angry

This was very confusing at all...I thought he would be happy but umuntu unama moods akhe

Well I didn't have time to nurse them out because nami nginezinkinga zami...I did the pregnancy test and it came out positive..I don't know how to say or do about this

I remember one night the condom broke between Rudzani and I...but because I was on pill I didn't worry...now here I am pregnant

I was so stressed..this was so messed..our relationship was still getting off the ground that if I should call it that way...now there's pregnancy

I mean he went back to Cape Town today and I'm here in jozi..how is this going to work

I sighed and called him holding the pregnancy test

Rudzani: baby ..

Me:hey are you home yet?

Rudzani: just got home. What's up? Miss me already?

Me:(I blushed) I wanted us to talk

Rudzani: u sound down and serious what's up

Me: well I dont know what to say ..I'm just.

Rudzani: you know that you can tell me anything right?

Me: well this is difficult...

Rudzani: Nontle..you are an adult and I want to treat you like one..so speak up please

Me: ok ..well I'm pregnant

He kept quiet for some time..I was also scared to say anything, finally he spoke

Rudzani:is it mine?

Me: whaaaat? So u think I would pin a pregnancy on you? Is that how low u think of me?

Rudzani: no babe don't be pissed..it's just that I thought u said u are on pill

Me:yes I am..I don't know how this happened..and don't u dare think I'm happy about this..I don't want no baby mina

Rudzani: calm down..don't make any hassle decision..Im sorry for what I said..tell you what. I will make some time and come to joburg so that we can talk about it ok?

Me:(sigh) ok...

Rudzani:don't worry I've got you ..love you ok?

Me:love you too

Rudzani: take care of my baby now I want to shower and talk to my son

Me:greet him

Rudzani: I will.. Sharp neh

I hung up.. Zama my little sister walked in all smiles looking at her phone..I hid the kit under my pillow...

Me: who's this guy that got you smiling like a retarded?

Zama:yoooh sis you won't believe this .like when I told my friends that this guy approached me for a date..they were so jealous

I rolled my eyes standing up

Me: you want me to drag it out from you? Tell me already

Zama:okay...okay... alright he's the first year student...he's royalty..his name is Thato Kgomo..sis he's hot ...

Me: you said Thato who?

Zama:Thato Kgomo....

Me: u can't date him...

Zama: why?

Me: well because Dad murdered his elder brother..that why he was arrested...

Zama: so what does that got to do with me?

Me: are u slow or plain stupid! It's either this boy approached you knowing this..he's using u to get to dad...or maybe he doesn't..what will happen when he learns the truth?

She swallowed hard looking down

Me: my thoughts exactly..get off this thing before you get hurt. .

----- Gugu -----

I was sleeping quietly in my hotel room...well I couldn't go back to the house .I was kicked out..

It was way past midnight when I heard something or someone sobbing at the corner..I stood up and sat with my butt naked still in dark listening to the sound of the sobs..it kept on going stronger

I switched on the light...gosh a male figure was seated at the couch in the room..his face buried in his knees that were brought up to his face ..I felt my heart racing..how did this man get here?

Me: excuse me..who are you and what are you doing here..?

He didn't reply but kept on sobbing..I was getting annoyed and scared at the same time...

Me:muntu webantu u better start talking before I call security...

Again he didn't say anything nor lift his head up...I grabbed the phone to call..but the lights went on and off..I was scared.. suddenly there was a wind blowing the whole room sending everything into the air

I covered my ears.. finally he lifted his face...oh my God!! Sechaba!!! .

He stood up and came to me ..

I tried getting from the bed to run but he grabbed me with my hair and slapped me hard I fell to the bed ..

Me: I'm sorry I'm sorry..

Edward: you have a liver to teach on me after everything I did for you .I don't have a problem nobufefe bakho..but to do it with my mentor that was another thing

I was wailing at the top of my voice crying as he was slapping his slaps sending me across the room...

The hotel staff came running to me and touched me..i screamed so terrified...

The hotel manager: mam..we heard noise..are u ok?

I looked around and everything was normal..the lights have stopped flicking...my heart was throbbing want to come out of my mouth

I looked around he was no where to be seen...the hotel staff looked at me with a pity look and I hated it...

This is the last episode of BEFORE THE END IN 2019..WE WILL MEET IN THE 2020 WITH EPISODE 2020...

TOMORROW I WILL BE POSTING KHETHIWE THE WHOLE DAY

ENJOY YOUR LAST DAY OF 2019

[1/3, 17:33] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

♥HAPPY NEW YEAR ♥

-----NARRATED -----

It's been a couple of weeks since Edward took over but the action was visible enough...Gugu was back to the mental hospital because now she was going around naked breaking things...

John was back from his trip and making time between his daughter and girlfriend...

Nazo and Thando were close again.. Thando asked her about her history with Sechaba..she admitted it and said that the only reason she kept it away was because of her heart.. protecting it

Nontle and Ruu were Bonding over the pregnancy and looking forward to have the baby

Zama didn't break up with Thato but instead things were getting serious between them

Simon decided to take a break to Lagos just to unwind bit.

Edward was constantly moving from all over the countries with the business he was doing...but he made time for Thando...

----- THATO -----

I looked at myself one more time before I headed out...checked the room.. everything was perfect..well today it's Friday and Zama is coming over to spend the weekend with me..I'm so excited...at the beginning I thought maybe I'm just gonna hit and pass but the more I spent time with her it was the more I was falling for her and I hated it..

Well I'm Thato kgomo, the last born to the great kgomo..I'm handsome as fuck..got swag and popularity..the guys I hang out with got swag too..like in my crew we are known to be the badass, no one really mess with us..

I have other chicks I fucked too but at this rate Zama seemed to be the main..I cared about her more than I do with the other chicks

I took my keys and left to get her...I called her when I have arrived to the destination...

Zama:im just around baby give me five minutes

Me: ayt

I hung up and chatted with my boys while waiting for her..I was seated on the bonnet wearing my black skinny jeans, black sneakers and long black shirt...

Voice: hey baby

I quickly looked up because that voice didn't sound like Zama's..oh crap..it was my bipolar girlfriend Sne...

Me: hey njunju...what are you doing here

Sne: was getting few things so I spotted you and thought I should come and say hi

Me: oh that's very sweet of you njunju but now it's not really the time or place...

I was thinking that Zama will pop out anytime..not that I mind but then I didn't want to hurt her like that..I guess I have a little soft spot for her

Sneh:oh why?

Me:I've got company

She narrowed her eyes to annoyance looking at me like I've just murdered someone

Sneh: askies?

Me: Im serious..please go I will call you

Sneh: you never call T...

Me:this time I promise I will

Sneh: you better..now give me some sugar..

She came between my legs and placed her lips on mine ..I kissed her back and quickly...she smiled walking away...the moment she was out of sight I wiped the lipstick...I saw Zama approaching my heart jumped with joy

She was on denim jumpsuit, blue heels and a white vest..she looked hot...her hair was tied to a neat bun..she had no make up on but she looked absolutely beautiful

I walked to her taking her bag and hugging her before planting a kiss on her forehead

Me:you look so beautiful baby

Zama:you look hot too..how are you

Me:now that you are here..I'm better.. hungry?

Zama:a little

Me: alright we will get something on the way ...what do you wanna eat?

Zama: pizza will do

Me: ok...

I started my car and walked away..I saw sneh at the rear view of my mirror

Shit! She never left..she was watching me.. knowing her bipolar tendencies..she will come to my place unannounced and cause a mess while im planning on spending some quality time with my babe. .

Me: baby have you been to Limpopo?

Zama:your home town?

Me:yes..

Zama:no..my life has always been around Gauteng..why?

Me: was just thinking how will it be if we go home and say hi to Mom and Dad..

I saw her face wearing a shocked expression yet excited

Zama:for real?

Me: yep..so what's is it going to be?

Zama: I would love that

Me:ok then we will stop by my place to get some few things then get ready for the road trip

I made it fast to my place..I packed few necessary things...then quickly walked out...we passed by the mall for food and drinks...then hit the road..

This road trip wasn't planned but it was so damn fun...we would stop somewhere around for a quick then proceed..I knew we were going to get home around 8pm..my phone was off because I knew sneh and other chick will blow it off ..

I can already imagine the look on my mother's face . she's pestering me about having girlfriend..worried that at 22 I'm not serious..I know she will like Zama because she's the perfect girl she would want me to end with....

-----THANDO -----

It was Friday afternoon and I was just doing a mini shopping for myself..well business was booming so there wasn't any harm to spoil and pamper yourself

I was finally getting my life in place and happy if i must say... Edward wasn't that difficult but he was manageable

He was a damn lot to take in but his physically appearance reminded me of Sechaba so that kept me cool..but his personality was definitely not his..he may have his body.. looks and walks but his ways was definitely not his

Now that I was used to him he wore off the Sechaba personality and showed off his real one..I won't say he was that bad..just that he was different to Sechaba

I'm still yet to get used to his disappearing acts every midnight...his temper and yeah but like I said it wasn't bad

I was just worried of dating and illuminati knowingly..I just wondered what that made me..I mean this people kill other people..suck blood..and is a monster in most kind of ways but I seem to be so addicted to him..I last saw him 3 days ago...he told me he will be back after a week . because he has an award ceremony to prepare for in New York

I was so thinking about this that I bumped into this huge tall guy ...my milkshake pouring his t-shirt

I snapped out of it and started panicking

Me:oh my gosh I'm so sorry ..I was just.

Isaac: Thando will you not sweat it?

I looked up .oh gosh I was so relieved it was Isaac...

Me:oh Jesus you scared me..what are you doing here ..

Isaac:your father sent me on an errand around

I didn't realise that I will bump into you...

Me: well I'm glad you did..how are you?

Isaac:as well as I can be

Me:great..so where are you going?

Isaac: to my hotel room around the corner

Me:whaaaat? Why would you book yourself on a hotel room while I'm just around

Isaac: I just didn't realise I was welcome to your house

Me: don't be silly..come I will make dinner

Isaac: I'm not sure about that ..

I pulled his hand and started to walk

Me: I insist..im bore anyway

We drove to my apartment..we chatted over random things and dinner was ready ..

We dig on it..his hair was tied up... revealing his handsomeness out...his big muscles displayed..I felt a little bit of wetness on my panties

I cleared my throat shaking the feeling away .I shouldn't have these kind of thoughts

Me: so tell me..are you happy?

Isaac: i am

Me:you are?

Isaac: yep

I knew from his answers he didn't want to talk so I let go .I was playing with my food.. crossing my legs because my pussy was twitching...I've never desired a man like I do now ..I undressed him with my eyes.. and the last time I saw him naked..oh gosh..I felt a pool down there..I stood up feeling all embarrassed

Me: I will put this to the kitchen

He didn't say anything just stared at me..I couldn't read his facial expression but didn't stay long to understand if

I placed the plate on the sink doing the breath in and out process...I felt his hand over me.. putting his empty plate on the sink...he remained behind me..not helping the situation between my thighs but making it worse

He slowly touched me on my shoulders.. peeling off my shirt from me...his other hand unbuttoning my shirt

I stood Still..let him be..my mind wanted me to tell him to stop but my body enjoyed every touch he gave me..

The shirt was off and I was left with my black bra...he pressed himself behind me and bent a bit kissing my shoulder with his hand running on my spinal cord sending goosebumps to my stomach...

He planted a soft peck on my neck...his hands moved to my bra playing with it until he unhooked it off..then his big firm hands massaged my breasts..I was till trying to stand still in the same position but it was so damn difficult

He left my body a bit and removed the t-shirt from him..then felt his Jean dropping on the floor...

Still behind me he removed my Jean...we were left with only underwears .the kisses were still going strong...

He slid his hand to my vagina..the pool in there made me feel a bit embarrassed..he hissed on my ear

Issac: so fucken wet baby...I love it

I just moaned with pleasure as his hand was doing me ...he turned me around the look on his eyes aroused me too much...he smashed his lips on my literally breathing on my face..I kissed him back...we were now completely naked...he picked me up and placed me at the table next to the sink

He pulled away from my lips and knelt down spreading my legs apart and he ate me. He ate me so damn good I was crying shoving his head deep...when I've came twice in his mouth he stood up and dragged me down

He made me hold the table while he came from the behind...the thrust were deep and so fucken good..I didn't know what to do with myself .I found myself pushing back to his dick with my hips...we both exploded..I thought it was over...he sat on the chair and spread my hips on him and made me move on top of him..oh boy this was good..very good.. fucken good that Edward... shit the thought of his name sent cold on my spine made my hair stand...

I stood up quickly and Isaac was so close to coming...he looked at me with bloodshot eyes..

Isaac: what the hell? I was so close damn

Me:I'm sorry but this is wrong

He got up and grabbed me roughly..making me hold the chair while he shoved himself on me roughly..he spanked at me hard ..it was painful and good at the same time . good Lord what am I doing..he choked me with the other hand

Issac: too late for that baby..don't you think..

He pumped on me real hard...I felt my legs getting so weak as his grip around my neck tightened..I coughed and he let go spanking me hard again while thrusting hard...I felt him panting and groaning I knew he was so close...

He pulled out and splashed his come on my ass spanking me some more...I'm so yellow and now I was sure that I was red from all the spanking and chocking..but funny thing is..I enjoyed it....

He disappeared for a moment and came back to me...he scoop me up to the bathroom where he has opened water...

We got in..he was behind me.. bathing me...

Isaac: I'm sorry I got carried away...

Me: don't apologise..I enjoyed it..

I really did..I remember I cried my eyes out when Edward tied me up and fucked the living shit out of me..but with Isaac I found it so good

We finished bathing and went to bed .I checked myself on the mirror damn I was so red... especially around my neck

We went to bed where we talked almost the whole night m fucking in between ..I got to know him a little better

I slept around six...by the time I woke up it was 12 pm and he has left already

I cleaned my apartment busy blushing and thinking about last night .I saw a pharmacy bag..I looked inside.it was morning after pills..oh thank God he remembered..I drank then while preparing a meal

I ate as I watched tv.. Edward called checking up on me..he sounded very busy that he didn't realise the guilty in my voice..

After eating I went back to bed and continue chatting with Isaac.. I needed to share the good news of the best sex I had with my bestie so I texted her and we gossiped ..

----- Issac-----

I was back in Johannesburg and so tired..my boss was so happy for the job well done but I was so stressed about what I did to his daughter and it's looks like I was getting addicted to it. .

I saw John coming to where I was seated busy fantasising about his daughter's pussy...I sat up straight

John:King

He loved addressing me with my surname

Me: George...

John:you have been distance since you came back are you alright?

Me:I'm good .just tired a bit

I couldn't tell him that I was tired from fucking his daughter!

He handed me the envelope he was carrying...I took it and looked at it inside...it was a property documents in cape Town under my name, 2 cars in my name, a 5million cheque and other business documents,I looked at him for explanation..

John: you have been a loyal servant for me to so many years..it's time I let you go and make your own empire..the deal you just wrapped at CAPE TOWN is a starting point for you ..make the better use of it

I was speechless but touched...just that a man don't cry

Me: but I love working for you George...

John':I Know..but it would be very selfish of me to keep you under me whereas I knew I want you to fly your wings

You are close to 30 Isaac..go out there... find the woman you love..marry her..settle down..make babies and spoil her

Me:(smiling) like you are doing with Nazo

John:(smiling too) yes..don't make the same mistake like me..look at me,43 not married .I'm even lucky to have kids..so I don't want that for you..so I'm releasing you..u have two weeks to wrap things up here..and I'm happy you will be that side to watch over my daughter since she's refusing to come back to jozi

The mention of his daughter made my heart skip a bit...

-----EDWARD -----

I was on Thando's office to say goodbye since I was going back to America..she was not happy about it since I've been with her for three days..eix there's nothing really I can do..I was really needed that side

Me:don't be so angry baby..before you know it I will be back ..

Thando: Edward do you ever get time to sleep.? Look at your eyes

My eyes were red and tired..I relied on drops to make them normal

I really didn't sleep ..during the day I'm running up and down..at night I'm killing people so yeah

Me:I will try to sleep honey on the plane I promise

She was sulking and I couldn't miss the glow on her pretty face. ..then suddenly there was a knock on her door

A man I last saw years ago stood in front of us ..I felt a cold breeze on my back..a little sweat as we coldly stare at each other

Thando saw the tension and cleared her throat

Thando : mhmm baby this is Isaac..he works for my dad.. Isaac this is...

Isaac: Edward Erasmus..

He interrupted her without shifting his gaze on me..

Thando: mhmm you know each other? How?

Isaac: I can never forget the face of the man who wiped out my family...

Erasmus..I wish I could say it's a pleasure man....

We back babies...drop a comment and let me know what you think 🙋

Next episode to drop tomorrow morning



[1/6, 08:07] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 21

-----ISAAC KINGS -----

My whole life,I have never had a good man like Johnathan George

Yes he has his flaws here and there,greedy like every business man, but I'm not ashamed that I can actually die and kill for him.

He has been there for me in a way no one has..he took me out from prison and Gave me job, salary,roof over my head.

As if that was not enough,he has given me a start to better life..a life I've thought I will not have after what transpired in the past..I was happy and content with my job with him. But him being selfless,he gave me more.

For that,I will forever be grateful,indebted to him. My heart broke when I left Johannesburg and flew down here,in the Cape.

What makes this arrangement better was the fact that Thando was just around..I don't know what is happening between me and Thando, but truth of the matter is that I can't ignore my feelings for her anymore,I'm not going to lie to her anymore.

Yes I still maintain that I may not be a good man for her..the man that she deserves,but im definitely the man that loves her..the man that will do everything for her

I've checked my apartment,it's exactly what I have imagined...5 bedrooms with bathrooms each inside..

Two kitchens, dining room, living room,study,my office, bar,cinema room, gym and a pool outside with two double garages that had two German machines

I felt overwhelmed with all of this...John has assigned two ladies that were working for him to come be my house helpers..now I wasn't their colleagues but their boss..

I checked the master bedroom and loved it..my closet was big enough for the girlfriend that if I have one soon to share her things with me..it was a Walk in closet with a mirror ,you can actually sleep in there..

My bed was fit for the king, George and his obsession of white...he has made me to love white colours too but I was cool with other colours .I loved the decor.

I contacted him letting him know that I've arrived and I'm so loving the house... I passed out immediately on top of the big bed...

I woke up the following day rejuvenated..I don't remember sleeping this long. I took my phone trying to call Thando,to let her know that I'm around,but I stopped myself.. reminding myself that I still have a lot to do around here..let me settle in first then I will go and say hi..

I got up and head to the shower..I took about 10, minutes there.. listening to water hitting my body...

I got out from shower and lotioned my body ..walked to my closet and pulled out black skinny jeans, blue shirts. I put on a belt and wore my sleepers..

I let my hair loose and walked out of my bedroom to the kitchen..I find them ladies setting up the table

Me: ladies

Them: hi Isaac..oh sorry boss

Me:(chuckling) don't be silly..guys we have been family for quite some time now..so relax .I won't bite

Feel free to call me Isaac... just do your job and stay out of my business and way we won't have any problems

Understood?

Them: yes

Me:great..and oh..you don't have to come here everyday...you work Monday,, Wednesday and Fridays

The other days you are off..now what are we having for breakfast? Please sit down let's all eat

They looked at me like I'm crazy..but sat down then we dig in on the delicious breakfast then walked to my office

It was perfect,just the way I would have wanted it to be. Clearly Johnathan has time to set this up for me..I felt myself getting a bit emotional when I saw my picture where I was 21,on my military uniform on a 4d size hanging over the wall...

I was young, Happy, smiling...I shook my head and got down to business... looking over the paperwork of my company.. my company is a car dealership and transportation

I rent and sell cars worldwide..I've just made the deal sealed few days ago when I was here..little did I know that I was setting up for myself..as expected in most dealership..I would steal few cars shipped to the country and sell it with good money to my customers

It was a great business deal that has a lot of money..I finished around with paperwork then walked to my bedroom to change to a formal Navy and white suite

I went to the dealership and met the guys..they all clapped hands and welcomed me as their boss..it was refreshing..

I checked my office and my PA who was up to date with things...met the other partners..

By the time I knocked off I was so damn tired..I just went straight home..had some meal,took a shower looked over some orders before I fell asleep

Today ive decided that no matter how busy my day is,I'm going to pay Thando a surprise visit . I can't wait any longer..damn I miss her.her scent..her smile...her gorgeous self...

She takes after John so much...I dress in brown and white .I'm not one guy to wear ties.. I pop in my office to do some work and give instructions to the guys and leave heading to Thando's work place.

I've Googled her,she has done pretty well for herself at such young age .I respect that

I arrived and parked downstairs..the stares I'm getting..I don't know if people hasn't seen someone driving a Lamborghini...

I walk to her office and remember along the way that I didn't bring flowers..shit you see this thing of being single for so long

The lady on the reception direct me to her office .I notice that most of the stuff her it's females..of which is interesting...women working together

I knocked at her door and what stand in front of me makes me want to throw up

It's doesn't matter how long it has been,the changes he made, I will never forget this face.

Edward Erasmus..I was wondering how did he survived that accident because I made sure he dies on it...then I saw the physical appearance and realized he made a deal...

I shook my head disappointed on Sechaba for actually allowing his spirit to be trapped on that devil's body and let him take over his precious body like that

I was mad to see him stand there..went even more mad when Thando introduced him as her man..is this girl crazy? Does she know what she's getting herself into? This man has no heart..maybe Sechaba did love her..but this monster in front of me doesn't..I'm pretty sure he's keeping her for his personal satisfaction..I know for a fact that he doesn't get along with John..he's a man with vengeance

I saw Thando being uneasy with the tension between us.. because we gave each other cold stares.. I finally spoke just to calm her down

Me: I was around town and thought I should come and see you .. didn't know you had company...

Thando: oh that's sweet... Edward was leaving anyway...right bae?

Edward just gave a side smile before frowning then kissed her lips walking out..I should kill him for good this time.

Maybe burn him to ashes..I felt my stomach turn when he kissed her. Wanted to grab his head and smash it against the wall.he left and Thando felt uneasy,I guess she picked up my mood

Thando: you are here a lot lately..you good?

Me: I'm fine..I've recently moved here..so that means you will see me often

Thando:oh ok.. Isaac I don't mean to pry.. you mentioned that Edward wiped out your family..what did you mean by that?

Me: I didn't know that I need a dictionary to make such simple English statement clear! I meant exactly that and he's gonna get what's coming for him

Look Thando I was hoping that maybe we can grab some lunch and I can show you my place and work place but now I'm not in the good mood so I will leave

Thando:(swallowing hard) I understand..I would have loved to though you know..

Me: some other time..

I walked out with my eyes so red..I had so much mixed emotions over me...outside I bumped to the lady we once shagged from the club..she went completely pale...

Sphe:uhmmm...you here..?

I just clicked my tongue and walked past her to my car..got in and reeved it out of sight...

-----THATO ----

We got home around 9pm.. the family was asleep already...so we just went to my room that was outside from the main house

It was now 6am and I was looking at Zama who was sleeping peacefully next to me.. she looked so beautiful even on her sleep.. her beauty and good heart just gave me a strong hard on more than the usually morning erection..

I have finished checking up my messages and Sne was blazing flames blowing my phone like crazy..I let the important people know that I've arrived safe and sound at home and switched it off

I moved closer to my gorgeous girlfriend and planted warm kiss to her forehead.. moving the hair backward.. I kissed her small mouth before taking full control of it... she woke up to my lips fully on hers

She looks so sleepy when asleep...

Zama:baby the morning breath

Me:I don't mind baby

I deepened the kiss spreading her legs apart..my dick was hard and a bit swollen..damn I've never desired a woman this much..that it hurt a lot

I massaged my Happy place and she was so wet... just when I was about to put it in..she stopped me

Zama:let me..

I smiled and moved back laying on my back and let her got on top of me...she directed my swollen shaft to her soft nana..she moaned when she took him in..rode slowly a few time and began to bounce on top of my dick

I found myself cursing and spanking her ass.. damn she was so good...she rode me quickly and fast..I was about to explored then she jumped off me..I came on my stomach...

She lay next to me smiling...I was breathing heavily...

Me:damn girl that was fire..where did you learn that from? Your experience amaze me because you only
19

She just shyed away from the question and get off from bed to the bathroom...I took the towel and wiped the sperms following her.

We took a naughty shower where she gave me a mind blowing blow job..I had to pin her against shower walls and give her deep thrust

We walked out from the shower..got dressed.. she was in plain long peach dress that covered her body so well and sandals

She wore a bit of make up and lipstick..I walked out hand in hand with her to the main house..

The moment my mom saw us she dropped everything and came to me to give me a hug

Mma Kgomo: my baby...

Me: mama

Mma Kgomo: when did you arrive?

Me:last night..you guys were sleeping.. where's father?,

Mma Kgomo: in the bedroom..I was just preparing breakfast..wanna help me dear?

She directed the question to Zama..my mother was friendly

Zama:I would love to

Me: mom this is Zama,my girlfriend.. baby this my everything..the first woman owning my heart before you,my mother

My mom was blushing from the introduction...

Mma Kgomo: oh baby you are so beautiful..son I approve

I knew she would.. Zama has all the personality that any parent would want from a daughter in law

I left them talking to go check up on father..

-----NAZO -----

I was resting by the pool with bae..I just had a crazy day at the hospital so I needed to rest as much as I could

John: I wonder how is Isaac settling in

Me:baby Isaac is 29 and you have taught him everything he needs to know about the business..I'm sure he will be alright

John:I know..just can't help wondering

Me:well maybe if it's bothering you so much..why don't you give him a call?

John: no .I don't want to appear as someone who has no hope for him

Me: then stop sweating

I got up and sat on his hips... immediately his face light up with excitement..I took full control and kissed him.. the kiss started slowly and got hot .he grabbed my ass on the bum short I was wearing.. unbuttoned my shirt and cupped my breasts..I was now breathing hard when my phone rang... and "bestie"pop up on my screen I groaned

Me:I'm so killing this daughter of yours for ruining this

John didn't say anything he just sucked my nipples..I let out a breath and answered

Me:babe..I'm in a middle of something here can I call you back..

Thando: I won't take long .. Isaac was here..and he met up with Sechaba things were a bit tense up

Me:mhmm ok(I was trying so hard to concentrate on the phone call but the way John was sucking my nipples damn..I found myself fondling with his dick on his pants)

Thando:I need his address. I want to see him

Me:mhmm yeah..oh gosh..sorry you saying?

Thando:. Voetsek Nazo are you having sex with my dad?

I couldn't help but moan when John inserted his finger on me..but the desperation on Thando's voice caught me..I moved back a bit .

Me: bitch I told you I was busy..I will send you the address now and don't call me again until I call you

I hung up.. went to whatsapp and texted her the address then logged out

I looked at John who was grinning like an idiot

Me: where were we?

John: I think we should take this to the house

He got up and carried me bridal style and we got in through the garage...the bedroom was far..he put me on the car bonnet ripping my short away..

My man wanted to be buried between my legs and I was so not going to deny him..I spread my legs wide giving him huge access

----- THANDO -----

I was still traumatized by the moans of my dad and Nazo.. it's so gross thinking about them having sex..and I have one crazy stepmother who will let me listen to their sex sounds. .ai no

I had just finished off bathing from work because of the heat..I so wanted answers from Isaac and he's going to tell me tonight

I took off my car keys and cellphone then walked out to my car..I drove to the address Nazo gave me.. only rich people live this side..it was so quite..I rang the bell at the gate..I guess after checking me from the camera he opened for me

I drove in and went to the door..I was about to knock when he opened...

His sexy body wrapped with the towel ..with his wet hair,I concluded that he was from the shower

Isaac:come in

He said letting me in..he looked better than when he was at the office...

I followed to his lounge..we stood in front of each other

Isaac: what can I offer you?

Me: yourself

I wasn't thinking straight..my pussy was twitching.. wanting his dick inside me .he took some minutes to digest the words I've said to him before marching to me closing the gap between us..he kissed me like he has never before.. hungrily and rough felt my lips burning up instantly

He tore my dress apart and picked me up to his bedroom leaving my bag on the floor

There was no words exchanged between us..we communicated with our bodies...like the connection between us was growing strong every time we made love...

We kept on changing positions up untill I passed out from being so tired...

I woke up the following day the sun was coming through his window

I looked around he was not next to me . I quickly went to take a shower because I still needed to go home and prepare for work... I came back from shower and found him on a white vest and boxers carrying breakfast

Isaac: good morning..wanted to surprise you with breakfast in bed

I just smiled with the towel wrapped around my body..I sat down and enjoyed the breakfast with him looking at me...

By the time I took the last bite..he moved the tray away and gave me a glorified morning..there was no time to shower again..I just put on the grey track pants he gave me..imagine track pants with heels..angithi he ruined my dress.. luckily I'm driving and I won't stop anywhere until home

I checked my phone on my way back and found about 14 missed calls from Edward..shit! I will call him when I get to work...

I parked the car outside my garage because I was coming out soon anyway

I rushed up inside ..put my bag on the couch and went to my bedroom..I had already took off the top..left with a bra...

I nearly fainted when I saw Edward naked on the bed ..like completely naked..when did he got here?

Edward: good morning baby..I was starting to doubt if you were coming back...come give me a morning Glory..I'm so horny

He was so calm.i wondered when did he get here..did he ever leave? Shit was he here alone the whole night? What is he thinking now seeing me on a males clothing so early in the morning?

Me: uhmm Edward when did you get here?

He got up from bed and came to me . looking at my breasts on my bra..

Edward:that doesn't matter sweetheart...

He said kissing my neck..oh God..there's no way I'm sleeping with him while Isaac sperms are still there...

Me:I need to get to work babe I will be late..

Edward: don't worry baby..I will be quick quick...

Apologies for the delay..it was a hectic weekend..double funerals to attend..

Enjoy your insert and check up Khethiwe on Thembelihle writings later

I love you guys      

[1/10, 10:16] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 22

-----THANDO -----

I knew that I was in a deep shit,like if I could allow Edward to touch me I'm dead..phela my vagina is oozing Isaac's sperms as we speak so there's no way

I need to find a perfect excuse to not sleep with him otherwise I'm dead ..

He continued kissing my neck breathing down my face..his air was causing me to shiver..he lifted up my face and planted a kiss on my lips.. God I was so scared like I was literally shaking...

He smiled..

Edward: relax baby I won't bite you...

He said pulling me closer, wrapping his arms around my waist..I needed an escape but still it was not coming...

I touched Him back and felt him so damn cold...like he was from a fridge..what the hell? It's 30 degrees hot outside and he's freezing like this?

Just then I tasted blood on my lips then I opened my eyes..shit he was bleeding from the nose..I quickly pulled out stepping back...

Me: Edward you are bleeding!!

Edward: what? Where?

Me: your nose! And you are freezing.. what the hell is going on?

Edward: shiiiiit! I'm sorry babe I need to go

He quickly grabbed his car keys..put on his clothes within a second he was out of my bedroom..I was hugging my chest wondering what the hell did just happened?

I quickly ran to the shower in case he decides to come back ...

I walked out wrapped on a towel .I put on my formal clothes and went to work...

When I walked out of the house, Edward's car was around but yena himself was not insight. Crazy..

I drove to work with lots of thinking..still wondering if he slept me what was going to happen? I smiled a bit thinking about the sex with Isaac....so fucking hot! I think I'm getting addicted..

I got to work and greeted my girls and got down to business...I was trying to shift what happened earlier with work...

Around lunchtime I received a call from Isaac..I smiled picking it up...

Me: hey Mr Kings...

Isaac: Ms George.. you good?

Me: my pussy is a little bit sore but I'm good

I heard him chuckling on the other side ..

Isaac: it's my lunch time,I was wondering if we can grab something to eat? And finally get a chance to show you around here?

Me: I would love that..send me your location will be there

Isaac:ok perfect.. meanwhile I will be placing an order for our lunch

I hung up and a location pin was sent .I grabbed my bag and drove there..

I know this dealership..I pass by here many times..never thought Isaac work here..I was escorted to his office...

I must say ,Isaac looks all kinds of yummy on a formal attire..

He stood up from his desk when he saw me and gave me a warm hug..I inhaled his cologne and felt myself getting wet..ngathi ngiba addicted nje..

Isaac: you look good

Me: thanks, not as good as you look by the way...

Isaac: let's go

He took my hand we walked around looking at cars and all that ..our food arrived we went to his office...

Isaac: yesterday you had something to ask...?

Me: yes.. I was curious to know what happened between you and Edward?

Isaac: Thando I think we should not go there..

Me: why? I need to know Isaac please don't keep me in the dark...

Isaac: he killed my family, I killed him..simple...

Me: but he's alive...

Isaac: half alive..there are some voodoo stuff they are using on him to make him alive.. you know in the illuminati world ,you can die now,they will replace you tomorrow...

Edward died long time ago..long before I went to prison....but they kept on raising him on people's bodies until they rose him up with Sechaba's body

I felt my body shivering with fear.. I have taken this thing lightly. At the beginning I was happy about having Sechaba back I didn't think this thing through...

Me:oh my God! You know this morning he wanted to sleep with me so badly when I came back to the house... I didn't even know he was there ..then when I touched him he was freezing cold and bleeding through his nose

Isaac: tell me..how long are you going to continue sleeping with a ghost?

This time my tears dropped.. I tried wiping them back but they came running like a river...

Isaac:(shaking his head) you can cry all you want Thando..you need to make a decision..and let me tell you something... Edward knows you are cheating on him.. I'm not afraid of him .I'm just worried what will he do to you.. meanwhile we should stop sleeping together...

Me:why?

I don't know why I asked that but it's felt sad when he said we should stop sleeping together...

Isaac: because I will not share you with ghosts... simple...until you make up your mind .this.. between us is over...

We continue eating in silence.. Isaac changed the topic and asked about my daughter..I smiled talking about her..she's my everything...

We finished eating then he walked me to the car..I stood by the door..

Isaac: thanks for coming by.. it was great seeing you again

He said smiling a bit..my God this man is so handsome...

Me: thanks for the invite.. can I get a hug?

Isaac: sure...

We hugged for a moment then pulled out..he planted a kiss on my forehead and let me go.

I got to my car and drove back to work .. I couldn't concentrate..my mind was so busy... Isaac's words were haunting me " how long are you going to sleep with a ghost "

All this time I've been sleeping with a ghost...I've been too ignorant to admit that..I mean..both Sechaba and Edward are dead.. making them ghosts..shit

I stood up and called my assistant... I quickly told her that I am going to go away for a while..she should hold things for me..

I drove home in a high speed.. I was so relieved not seeing Edward's car outside..that means he's gone..thank God.

I got inside and went to my bedroom..I need to get to joburg as fast as I could..I need my dad.. I need my best friend...they will know how to help me out of this..

I took my bag and started packing up my things.. it wasn't a lot ..just to last me for a week at least... I finished packing and zipped my bag pulling it out with my handbag...

Just as i approached lounge.. Edward was there.. drinking water ..he looked good but I wasn't interested in his looks..I was pissed

Edward : going somewhere?

Me: yes..I need to see my father...

Edward: why?

Me: excuse me? Now i must have a reason to see my dad?

Edward: Thando I know what that fool told you. Baby he's lying ok? Listen..I'm willing to forgive you for everything but please don't go...

Me: Edward I don't know what you are on about but I really need to leave right now .so please get the hell away from my way

Edward: I'm sorry sweetheart I can't allow you to go..not like this . Thando I can't loose you.mm

I walked to the door..he pulled le rough by my arm and shoved me to the couch ..

Edward: I TOLD YOU THAT YOU ARE NOT GOING! WHY CAN'T YOU LISTEN!!

I felt so angry..the fear I had was long gone..I'm so going to deal with this ghost today...

Me: who the hell you are to tell me what to do and not to? Edward get the hell out of my way you bloody ghost!

I pushed him hard he fell to the other couch..I stood up and ran to the door.. miraculous it locked right in front of my eyes .. I tried opening it but it was locked...

I turned around Edward was behind me.. looking all kinds of angry..

Edward: you shouldn't have done that sweetheart now you are going to pay dearly for it

I don't know what happened after that because I felt myself getting dizzy...and it was light out ...

-----THREE DAYS LATER-----

-----ISAAC -----

I was on my house , drinking my wine..im missing Thando so much..it's scares me..I think I'm falling for her deeply..

I know that I told her we should stop doing anything but I didn't tell her that we should stop communicating..I guess she took this thing wrong..I miss her..

I took my phone and dialled her number..it rang a couple of times before she picked up...

But it wasn't her on the line ..

Edward: the liver that you have! What do you want Kings?

Me: the owner of the phone...

Edward: we are on a holiday.. stop disturbing us...

Me:I don't believe you..

Edward: Isaac don't push me..I'm only tolerating you .don't push me

Me: stop giving yourself credit..we both know you can't kill me even if you want to..now give the phone to the owner...

Edward:she's in the shower..I will tell her you called .if interested she will call you back ...

The line went dead..he hung up on me..this wasn't making any sense..I failed to believe that Thando went to a holiday with him after what I've told her?

I don't know when I fell asleep but I overslept...i arrived at work around 9.. I looked hell..I tried doing some work but I was unable to concentrate so I drove to her workplace...her colleagues told me that she took some time off ..shit so it's true .

I drove to her house... everything was spot on.. I realized she took some of her things... I sat down on her couch and called her again...

This time she picked up

Thando: _hi Jack_

My second name is Jack..I'm Isaac Jack Kings .but most people use the first name or my surname.. nobody really calls me with that name...

Me: Thando..you fine?

Thando: yes im.ok..im on a holiday...

Me: ok...

I hung up.. something is not right here...again the " hi Jack" came to me..why would Thando call me Jack today?

" Hi Jack" it's rang to my mind again...fuck shit...she was giving me a clue without alarming that fool " hijack" simply " hijacked" she was in danger !

Fuck fuck! I knew it was the matter of time that psycho pulls something like this...

I went to her bedroom and looked at everything..her personal belongings we're gone..

I got out of the the house and drove to mine... I took all the necessary details and head to the airport..I need to be at Johannesburg.. tonight...

----- NAZO -----

My man and I were cuddling nicely on the couch watching TV...

It's days like this where I get to thank God for giving me a man like John..he's such a darling...

John: baby..

Me:yes love..

John:when last did you speak to your friend?

Me: it's been a while dad.. I've been really busy , what's up?

John: nothing I just miss her..I haven't heard from her for like 5 days now..

Me: maybe she's busy with work .she will call

I knew Thando was busy screwing Isaac but I didn't want to be the one telling John that because I don't know how he will take the news...

Just then the door opened.. Issac walked in with his black bag...

John stood up looking at Issac who looked so spooked..

John: you better start talking

Isaac: you need to sit down for this

Isaac told us about Thando and the so called Edward guy..it was crazy..it didn't make any sense.. why would Thando keep something like this from me? Probably she knew I wouldn't approve of this madness..

John was going up and down.. clearly mad. .

Me: uhm guys. I know two powerful pastors who are exorcists..they can help us...

Isaac: sorry to bust your bubbles madam.but Edward is the kind of demon that burns every pastor coming near him..he's protected by 5 codes..even if they try..they won't get to him..

Me:it's worth a try..look Isaac..I've seen these guys delivering the most demonic people .. I really do believe that they are strong and very powerful...

John: who are they?

Me: Mthokozisi Zulu and Mncedisi Ngema from Jesus is King ministries

John: I know the one from Jesus is King..I don't know the other one

Look Isaac... let's prepare for war .in the meantime baby contact them ..we need to deal with this demon once and for all...

They stood up and went to the study..I took my phone and called the JIK ministries office...

Voice : Jesus is King ministries how can we help you?

Me: hi..I have a very important message for prophet Ngema...

Voice: hold on...you are lucky he's still around . let me get you in touch with him..

Me: thank you I will hold ..

Look out for the next insert later or tomorrow

Have a blessed day and please participate..the more you comment and like the more I write .

We have more than 2000 readers here..so let's break a record today and get atleast 500 reactions I will drop another INSERT today!!!

Much love to you all 

[1/11, 18:55] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

(NOT FOR THE FAINT HEARTED)

PG: 18 L,V,S,N

-----NARRATED -----

Isaac and John called their female friend from the other side because they knew that Edward took her out from S.A..

The friend is a former Illuminati so she was going to help them get to Edward...

While on the other side Nazo was waiting for the pastor's to arrive because they said they were on the way...

After like an hour they arrived... Isaac and John came to join them..

Isaac didn't believe in this thing..he just wanted to take the flight back to that side and get Thando..but he knew doing so will only cause problem...

While they were busy filling up the pastor's about what happened, Isaac sneaked out and called Chad...Thando's younger brother...

Chad: bra I

Me: niggah...I need your help

Isaac explained the situation..to his surprise Chad took the news better than expected..

Chad: I will organise the guys bra I don't worry we will get my sister out there...

Me: thanks..We will tell you once we have heard from the goddess

He hung up and went inside...

Prophet Mncedisi was still explaining to them how this whole thing will work.

Mncedisi: I need to baptize all of you guys. You need to be clean and purified for this war..I must say this is not some game..people die in these things...you need to be serious...

So right now we are going to go out to do the cleansing baptism..after that we are going to Jesus is King ministries to pray. May I remind you that as from now on no one will eat anything..I know the devil may try to tempt you with food but don't..we are not playing here..

Your mind and soul should only focus on the process ahead of us ..

Nazo: how long will this take place?

Mncedisi: we can't do anything now..we will strike tomorrow around this time..so we have the whole day to prepare...

Nazo: you mean to tell me that we won't eat,have sex for 12 hours?

Mthoko: hey wena ntombazana do you think we have time to play with you here? Do you want your friend to come back or what?

John:baby come on..(he gave her a reprimanding look)

Nazo: sorry I was just asking

Mncedisi: I suggest you don't partake on this..you are the weakest link..the devil can get easily to you if you are not focused...

Nazo: please don't leave me behind..I was just curious and joking..I will be serious...

Mthoko: well this is not a good time for some stand up comedy..

Get your Bible's and let's go...

They took all necessary things and left for Jesus is King....

-----EDWARD -----

I was looking at Thando sleeping on my bed. I have removed the chains from her because I just had sex with her.

This is starting to annoy me..I can't continue having sex with her while sleeping..I missed the days where she took control..riding me you know..

Her ankles were red..I hate hurting her..only if she could just listen to me and stop being so stubborn..the reason I'm chaining her is because she's been fighting me and trying to escape...

I fixed my pants and went to sit on the couch in the room..I took my magic stick and draw a circle around the wall the sprinkled on it ..

John's house appeared...it was so empty..I checked every room no one was there..where are they?

I know they are looking for her so where the fuck are they?

I erased the circle the moment I heard movements From the bed...

She woke up with swollen eyes and gave me a very murderous look..if I was just an ordinary I would probably be scared you know...

Me: you up sunshine?

Thando:my pussy is sore..did you have sex with me while I was sleeping again Edward?

Me: what other choice do I have?

Thando: you are sick! I so hate you!

Me: too late for that don't you think?

Thando: you are so going to pay for this I swear...

BACK AT JESUS IS KING MINISTRIES

Mncedisi invited his spiritual father and some other bishop because this battle was hard..

Isaac was still up locating Edward with the help of the goddess...

Nazo was looking like hell and it was only 11am ..they didn't sleep the whole night praying and being delivered...

John: are you ok?

Nazo: I'm fine just a bit tired..

John: baby it's not too late to walk away from this..let's us handle this...

Nazo: no..I want to be here..she's my best friend...

John: ok but do rest

Nazo smiled and kissed him..

Nazo: I love you ok..don't ever forget that

John: I love you more..

Nazo: let me go to the rest rooms I will be back

John: ok..

Nazo walked away..she got in the bathroom and peed..walked out and washed her hands..on the way back she got on the wrong door that lead to the kitchen...she found herself opening a fridge..her stomach made those hungry sounds...

She looked around to check if there was no looking..when satisfied she took a big bite of the cheese cake she found in there ..she opened the 2 litre coke and drank from the bottle..she then saw two slices of pizza .she helped herself with them..

When she was satisfied she closed the fridge and wiped her mouth going out..she found the right door and walked back in

The moment she walked in Mthoko eyed her up and down as if she was suspecting her..she kinda felt guilty but she acted strong..now she was fully she can pray...so she thought

Isaac: gents we have the location

Mncedisi: awesome guys gather around let's form a chain and start a worship song..when we done we are all praying...

They held hands and they started singing the popular worship song "wehlukile"

John and Isaac didn't sing along because they didn't know the song and lyrics but they were moved too.. something touched them on their hearts .it was the holy spirit..

" Madolo onke,ayakhothama,kuweeee...

Bayede...bayede ..bayed..

Wena wehlukile, awulinganiswa"

They kept on singing that song until they were all in the holy Spirit while the praise went up Isaac fell down and groaned crying...

Mncedisi took his holy water and sprinkled it all over him...

Mncedisi: father in the mighty name of Jesus..Lord I come before you as your servant...silahlekile Nkosi..help us father..help us locate sister Thando through Isaac..take us to her oh Lord..

Baba,wena simakade wehlukile, ingakho sithi bayede, awulinganiswa...wena mnikazi wempi wathi ezwini lakho asingazithwaleli imithwalo ngokuba wena ukhona...

Lord you further said on Isaiah 54 verse 17 that no weapon formed against us shall prosper. You said that you will have an answer for all who accuse us, you further went on to say that you will defend us your servant and give us victory

Lord we need that victory..we need to get her home..locate her father God... Lord I send fire to her captures..the devil has no power over us . Let fire burn and scartter everyone involved with the world of darkness"

-----EDWARD -----

I was doing some work on my computer while Thando was sleeping..I had to drug her because she was getting to my nerves with her Sharp tongue...

I felt my hair rising at the back of my head...I stood up taking my magic stick...I suddenly felt hot over my skin..I took off my shirt but the level of heat increased...I turn on air conditioner it was like I'm fueling it...

I draw the circle on my all again..and there they are ..I located the.. bloody morons..at the church...they think they are safe? They don't know me

They will not get Thando..I quickly went to her and tried to put a code on her but I heard this voice screaming " Fire" suddenly something pushed me back I fell and Thando woke up

Thando: I heard voices of people praying .that gave me some hope .it's gave me some closure..why didn't I think of this? In order to overcome this devil I need to pray because guns and knives won't work...

Thando started praying and casting too... Edward disappeared and reappeared at JIK ministries

-----JIK MINISTRIES -----

Edward: yey you wizards..cowards I'm here now...

Mncedisi turned and looked at him..he was wet wet from all the sweat of praying...

Mncedisi: I see you have some balls ain't you?

Edward: I'm not afraid of you!

Mnce: really look at me.!

Edward looked at Mncedisi but his face was shiny and bright..wavele waxopheka same time...

Edward: fuck dude who the hell are you?

Mnce:ngingothandiweyo nothembekile ka Jehovah..I'm sent to this Earth to serve his people..right now I'm going to command you to release her...get her out ..

Edward: no...

Mnce : code 1378 burn! Fire...

He released fire with his Bible Edward fall back against the wall hitting it hard

Edward: no....

Mncedisi continued to call out the code burning them one by one because it was them that they were protecting him...all these other time the others were praying too...

Nazo couldn't utter a word..she was shaking..she has never seen such a think...

When Mncedisi called out the last code Edward used his last power to fight back but Mnce blocked it with his Bible and it went and hit Nazo...she fell on her back holding her heart ..

No one really noticed because they were focusing on Edward...

Isaac was rolling on the floor crying painful...

Mncedisi: I am going to ask you one last time... Erasmus give it up now...

Edward was slowly melting and peeling off the fire that was consuming him was too much... Mncedisi sent him flying back to where Thando is...

He appeared in the room..Thando was sweating from praying...

Edward:I'm so sorry..I never meant to hurt you..my purpose was to love you and take care of you..you betrayed me..

Ah..oh God I'm burning please help me...

Thando didn't know what to do..she was so scared to move an inch closer to him...

Then miraculous the cuffs around her unlocked and she was free..she ran to the door and started screaming for help

Minutes later Chad came running with his men and kicked down the door...they hugged a brief...Thando so relieved to see them...

Edward was scratching himself moving up and down. Chad pulled a gun and pointed it at him..

Chad: send my greetings to the devil

He pulled the trigger .. instead of bullets coming out..some liquid stuff shot Edward and fire burned him...

They walked out with Chad remaining to make sure if he's really dead...

-----JIK MINISTRIES-----

AN HOUR LATER..

All members were gathered around..there were small sobs..and sniffing around...

Mthoko:I'm sorry Mr George it has come to this...like we have explained that in war such things happens..some get injuries some die..I'm so sorry about your loss..take it easy.. she is in the better place..she died fighting for her friend to come back home...

Only if she followed the rules and didn't eat ..

John:(wiping tears) I don't know how to make of this..what will I tell Thando?

How is Isaac and the other pastor?

Mthoko: prophet Mncedisi got few injuries he will be ok..the person who really got affected is this white boy..we should pray hard he makes it...

John: please pastor do anything..I can't loose Isaac too

Mthoko:God is in control .he won't allow that...

-----FEW DAYS LATER -----

Nazo was laid to rest on a dignified way ever...John tried to be strong but he couldn't...

Thando broke down and cried so painful... Isaac was slowly recovering...

Chad walked in Thando's room..he sat down next to her...

Chad:come on you need to stop crying now..it's been a week...

Thando: and it's feels like yesterday...

Chad:it's going to get better with time..

Thando: how do I go on from this? How do I survive knowing my stupid actions killed my friend?

Chad: hey stop doing this to yourself..none of us planned this .you wouldn't deliberately do it..

Thando: I guess I was just too excited to have Sechaba back I didn't think this through..didn't realize it was too deep..

Chad: yeah eix it is too deep..I don't even want to think about everything...have you checked up on Isaac?

Thando: no..I'm scared..I don't know how he will look at me..Chad I've bee. Sleeping with ghosts...do you think he will ever look at me the same?

Chad: people go see him..My sister that guy nearly lost his life saving yours...if there is a chance in this life that you could be happy..then it's going to be with Isaac...

Thando:(smiling) when did you become so wise?

John: I also wish to know .

John walked in with the limping Isaac and they sat down...

Chad: dad it's so rude to eavesdrop on people's conversation you know?

John: I wasn't eavesdropping I was just walking in...

Chad: I'm so sorry Dad that Nazo left before I could meet her..she sounds like a good person..I'm sure that me and her were going to get along...

John : im pretty sure of that my boy..but then again... God knows best ..let's give these two some privacy

Chad and John walked out... Isaac was seated on the couch.. laying back his head..his stomach covered with bondage...

Isaac: come here

Thando stood up and went to sit on his lap on his lap .he looked at her with those sexy eyes...

Isaac: you good?

Thando: no I am not .I'm so scared...

Isaac: dont be..I need to tell you something I nearly died without telling you...

Thando: ok...

Isaac:I love Thando Ngobese George..I love you so much...

Thando couldn't stop the tears from falling she just wrapped her arms around him and kissed him for dear life. .

Thando: thank you so much ..I thought you will not want anything to do with me after this ..I love you too...

Isaac: marry me please.....please be Mrs Kings...


Thando: you joking right?

Isaac: do I look like I am? I know I don't have a ring baby but as soon as I'm fit to go out I will get you the best one...

Thando:oh my God you are serious? Yes yes yes Isaac I will marry you!!!!

-----THE END OF BEFORE THE END SEASON ONE-----

SEASON 2 START MONDAY WITH NEW CHARACTERS, NEW STORYLINE...WITH SPECIAL APPEARANCES OF ROBERTS BROTHERS

THANK YOU FOR WALKING THE SEASON 1 JOURNEY WITH ME  I LOVE YOU ALL SO MUCH

[1/11, 23:09] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

SEASON 2

NEW STORYLINE!!!

INSERT 24

-----NARRATED-----

It was one of those lousy Thursday afternoon in Johannesburg cbd, a young girl was seen running around the busy crowd dodging bullets...

People were screaming,she was slender,tall and yellow bone

She was wearing one of those bumshorts aveza ikhwapha lesinqe...

One gunshot went off the young girl was sent flying inside a nearby club...

Bouncers rushed after her because everything happened so fast and they found her near the bar area, sitting down tears rolling on her face ..

The boss man who was doing something there got disturbed a bit and put aside the phone and looked at this young girl...

She was shot on her thigh but she was not crying...

Tony: what the fuck is going on here?guys how did this brat passed you?

Bouncer 1: sorry boss everything happened so fast...

Tony:argh marn you are so useless...little girl..talk..who are you and what are you doing in my club?

Girl: sir before I answer all your questions can you please get me your strongest whiskey ever?

Tony looked at her for a while..she had this potable body for models..her hair was black and rich...if you were to measure it with weaves you can say it was a 14 inch kinda...

She had round big eyes, small lips, and cute nose... Tony went to the bar and got the whiskey and hand it to her..

The girl drank from the bottle and Tony screamed

Tony:are u crazy? That's my finest whiskey!!!

Girl: sorry

She didn't care that Tony was mad as hell..she poured some on the gunshot wound ...she teared up her top and used it as bandage...

Tony looked at her while she was fixing her up... somehow he was kinda impressed...

Tony told his guys to go back to their post he will handle her...

He grabbed a chair and sat next to her.. luckily on Thursday they open at 19:00 and now it's 14:30, the staff was to arrive at 16:00..

Tony: little girl talk!

Girl: you don't waste time are you? Ok geez! Don't swallow me I will talk...but for now I'm hungry...can you get me some food? I can't really speak on an empty stomach...

Tony: I can see that you have made yourself very comfortable..listen here I'm not your friend do you here me? I'm a very busy man and I don't have time for bullshit..

Girl: then why are you here talking to me?

Tony: because you are trespassing..do you know that's a very serious charge to the police? I can get them here just like that ...

That seemed to get the little girl to behave a little...

Girl:ok fine I will talk .don't call the cops...

I'm Thalitha Groetboom

Tony: you Xhosa?

Thalitha: yes and you are Nigerian...

Tony: continue...

Thali: there's nothing really to talk..I was just running away from the wrong crowd I messed around with..so they shoot me..relax though they won't come after you..I think I dodged them

Tony: how old are you again?

Thali: I don't see how is that your business but I'm 18 to be 19 in 2 months time..

Tony: ain't you supposed to be at school or something?

Her facial expressions suddenly changed ..she attempted to get up limping...

Thali: thanks for your whiskey and everything..I will pay it someday..I need to go...

Tony: where to?

Thali: none of your business

She limped out going away.. Tony quickly indicated to the guard on the door to follow her and see where she's going to..

Let's introduce Tony...

Tony Roberts is your typical bad body fuck boy Nigerian guy...he's so hot..tall , black and big..not fat just big and strong..he's very obsessed with gym...

He's 28, with one daughter who's a year old...he lives alone at his house in Rosebank..owns a multiple businesses but this club is one of his favorite because it was his first business he opened when he arrived at jozi..

He went to his office and got his things to go home ..he got in his car and drove away...

He arrived at his house and took off the formal clothes he was wearing at work and went to the gym...he hit it hard...

After an hour he went to take a shower and wore skinny jeans,sneakers ,golf t-shirt...he was going back to the club..

Tonight they were having a performance by Tekno so he had to be there to give his homeboy a warm welcome...

Just as he opened the door to go out he bumped into Sean and Seth...

Tony: oh my God what the fuck you two doing here?

He jumped on them hugging them.. really excited to see them..

Sean: we came to check how our lil brother is holding up..your father contacted us to do so .

Tony: Shane need to stop now abeg I'm old to handle myself...

Seth: that what o I told him but we ain't complaining..we missed you marn

Tony: missed you too moron...hey look at you getting all fat..dey marriage treat you good a beg?

Seth: boy.. you have no idea..shit the sex every now and then

Sean: Tony when are you getting married? Dude you 28...

Tony: leave me alone.. you got married when you were 33 so please

The brothers laughed..Tony put their bags on the lounge...

Tony: boys I was going to the club..there's a performance..wanna tag along or you want some indoor moment?

Seath: i haven't been to clubs in a while .damn I miss South Africa...

Sean: serves you right..you let that woman control you too much...

Seth: says someone's who's so whipped

Sean: you crazy.. I'm not whipped...

Seth: Bros don't try me...I will call Dineo now now...

Sean: don't bring my wife into this...

Tony laughed so hard ...they all got out and used one car driving to the club..the noise they were making..you could tell that they were so happy

They entered the club ,it was getting packed already...they moved to the VIP area and Tekno and his boys were already in..talk about punctuality

They greeted each other making that crazy noise..

They sat down.. ordered drinks, smoke and all... Tony got his orange juice..out of all the Roberts brothers..he was the saint one..not really saint..he was better..he didn't do those voodoo stuff..he attended church...didn't drink nor smoke..he even attend church sometimes...

Tekno started performing and the crowd went crazy...

Tony: how's Shawn? Haven't seen him in a while?

Sean: one would swear you in Lagos while all of us are in one province..he's in Pretoria..under Amahle's thumb..

Seth:you like talking shit about our wives while you yourself are wrapped under Dineo's thumb...

Tony: guys don't start the sibling fight with me now please..I was just curious..

Then Tony shifted his attention to the crowd..his eyes showed him something..the same girl who was here earlier was dancing with some man old enough to be her grandfather...

She was so drunk...this time she looked so classy..had her bag on her back, wearing white high waist short...a peach crop top and some heels..her make up was nearly done...she looked completely different than how she was earlier...

Sean: what are you staring at?

Tony: that girl...

He indicated with his look..Thali was having so much fun laughing loud while the man was grabbing her ass

Sean: isn't she young to be here?

Tony:my thoughts exactly..I'm coming guys have fun

He stood up and went to the girl.. luckily the old man was going for a smoke.. Tony roughly grabbed her and moved with her around the crowd till they got to his office..he pushed her inside and locked the door...

Thali: what the fuck was that?

Tony: what are you doing here? This place isn't for kids...

Thali: how that is your business? Infact why are you all over my face? Intoni..ufuna I blow job?

Tony wanted to slap the foolishness out her domkop so bad but he remembered that he doesn't hit women..ever..

As he was about to say something she throw up...he went mad

Tony:no you did not! You just didn't throw up in my office! Little girl what's wrong with you?

Thali:(burping) I'm so sorry...

Tony was so frustrated he went to his desk..he called the bouncer to come with a cleaner into his office...

After the cleaner was done cleaning she left...

Tony: now start talking..how did she get in here? Isn't the club restrictions clearly state no under 23's here?

Bouncer: I'm sorry boss man..she came with that big guy..so I couldn't really separate them together...

Tony: damn it Razor you are so stupid and lacking these days! Do you want cops to close on me for prostitution?

Anyway what did you find about her earlier?

Bouncer: well she's a street kid boss...

Tony: no way..she's too smart for that

Bouncers: for real boss..I followed and asked around they confirmed it... apparently she's one of the high wanted thieves...

Tony looked at her sleeping on the couch...he failed to understand what was being said to be true...

Tony: thank you Razor that will be all for tonight I will handle it..

Razor left..Tony knelt down looking at her..she had tattoos on her upper body.. beautiful one..he stood up and left the office locking it

He went back to his brothers..they chatted catching up..then Sean said he need to go his wife needs him..

Seth laughed out loud while Sean showed him the middle finger and left

Seth and Tony remained behind chatting..when it was time for closing, Tony went to get the girl .she was dead asleep..he got her to his car and drove with her to his house...

Seth avoided questions because he knew Tony is like Shawn...he really don't take nonsense...

They arrived at the house..Seth took his bag and went to the guest bedroom...

Tony took the girl to the bedroom next to his...

He wrote down something..and placed it next to her pillow and went out locking the door.

----- THALITHA GROETBOOM -----

I woke up the following morning on a comfortable big bed..I looked around...I don't remember how I got here..shit I blacked out! What the hell is wrong with you Tha? You never black out..

Could it be that the man I was with spiked my drink? I looked around the room and it was so beautiful..my head is pounding like crazy ..

I saw a note on the draw...

" Headache pills..take a shower and wait for me"

I took the pills and got off from bed dragging my tired body to the bathroom and drank them pills...

My stomach made those funny sounds showing that I am hungry...in this bathroom I had everything I could use to take a proper bath...

I thought how long has it been since I had a nice shower..I stripped my clothes and got inside...I soaked myself in while enjoying the warm water

I was thinking about the person who brought her here..I was wondering what's next...

Ok let me do a proper introduction about myself...

I'm Thalitha Groetboom, 18 years old.. I'm living on the streets.. started living there when earlier this year when I got kicked out of varsity...I couldn't go home because I was tired of being the victim of sexual abuse...

Not having anywhere to go..I started hustling using my vagina and skinny legs. Sometimes it's hard because you find rough clients that won't even want to use protection with you...

I've done two abortions up until I decided to be on a 6 months injection

Home is in Eastern cape..I don't want to talk about my parents because I consider myself as an orphan..I've got me..I'm all alone..

My mother chose my stepfather and his son over me so I really don't have a family..no matter how hard life gets..I will never get back there..

My life started to change when I was 16, I had passed well with 4 distinctions..I was so happy.. looking forward to study drama and arts here in joburg... until my nightmare happened...my own step brother raped me..yep I was 16 he was 24...

As if that was not enough..the following year his dad did too ..I told Mom she didn't believe me..she said I was lying...

When I fell pregnant earlier this year for her husband's baby..she kicked me out the house ..cut me out of everything..they stopped paying my fees..

My stepfather is a very ruthless man..so heartless.. together him and his son..I hate them

The day I was running like crazy..I was running away from them..they have located my location since I was kicked out of the flat because I couldn't pay rent...

The bag I always carry on my back has my life.. identity documents and all..I live by shoplifting.. especially clothes..

I felt tears coming and I shoved them back..I dried myself and got out ..I found new pair black track pants and some underwear...

My bed was made..oh ok..I must have been long on the shower..I wore the clothes and they fitted me just fine...

I tied my hair to a messy bun and walked out wearing the sleepers I found next to the bed..

My bag was not with me and I was starting to panick.. losing that bag means loosing my life ..

I walked down the long stairs to the dining area..I looked at the time on the watch framed on the wall...it was around 11..damn I've been drugged

I sat down because I really didn't know what to do..I started biting my nails .I do that when I'm panicking.

Then one handsome guy walked in..he was carrying a tray...he looked so much better away from formal..the Nigerian club owner I ran to that day...

He was on his grey sweat pants,sandals and a vest...his dickprint visible..ok Thali behave babes...

Tony: hi you up .we just finished having breakfast so here's yours ..

I wanted to ask where am I..how did he get me here..but I chose to eat first to get some strength..

Me: thank you

I Hardly say those words..I guess you may say I've got pride for days ..he left me to eat in peace

The breakfast was very delicious I won't lie..it's remind me when I get kind clients who will care enough to take me to breakfasts...

He returned a moment back now dressed in formal...

Tony: are you ok now? I can get my helper to give you more...

Me: no I'm fine.

Tony: great... Thalitha we meet again... Tell me why are you on the streets because you are very talented..I mean I looked at your paintings on your back and your marks ...girl you...

Me: wooah..brika ned daar..uthi you did what?

Tony: I'm sorry I didn't mean to pry I just needed to know a little bit about you..

Me:(I shut my eyes fuming with anger) sorry, what's your name again?

Tony: Tony Roberts...

Me: Mr Roberts..I don't appreciate people going through my stuff without my permission..now can I get my things so that I can go?

Tony: where will you go?

Me : it is really none of your business...

Tony: I understand that you are a proud lady..but I won't sleep knowing that you are out there on the streets suffering..let me help you...

Me: I don't need your pity ..I don't need anything man investing in me...

Tony: ok how's this..how home about you come and work at the club.. you will earn some money in a decent way then you can go back to school...

I thought about it..it won't be such a bad idea..I mean I can always meet handsome rich clients coming to the club...

Me:(standing up) I will think about it..now I need to leave..

Tony: I'm on my way out..let me give you a lift?

Me: no akunangxaki wethu I will just walk...

Tony: ok fine.. here's some money for the taxi..take it..I insist

He shoved R200 on my hand and walked away..I felt a bit emotional..no man has ever been this kind without wanting something in return

Me: what do you want out of this?

I shouted as he was at the door...

Tony: nothing..I want you to be the better version of yourself...

Then he opened the door..some woman.. probably in her 20s walked in carrying a beautiful baby girl...

This lady was classy I won't lie...

Kimberly: oh thank God I caught you home baby..love I'm sorry to inconvenience you like this but can you look after Saint just for today?

Tony: Kim you starting now you see..I'm on my way to the club and I can't take the kid there!

Kim: please baby just for few hours..I have a meeting around and the nanny is having her own personal crisis...

Tony: how long are you going to be gone?

Kim: maximum two hours love I promise

Tony: fine

He sighed taking Saint from her..she was so excited and kissed him deep

Kim': thank you so much .I will see you guys later ..how do I look?

Tony: amazing..go do your thing..me and princess we will bond..

Kim': you're the best..I love you guys

Tony: we love you too

She kissed her daughter and left...ok maybe I judged this man..maybe he's not that bad hey

Tony: where were we?

Me: doesn't matter..let me go

Tony: think of my offer and let me know...if I'm not in the club later I will be here

I just nod my head and walked out with my bag..I doubled checked if everything was there before leaving then walked out...

I was planning on what to do with the R200 with me..I bought airtime and decided to call home with a private number..that scene between Kimberly and her daughter touched me..it reminded me how mom and I used to be..before she married that evil man

Thali's mom : private number hello

I suddenly felt my heart beating so fast..I couldn't talk...

Thali's mom: yehheni wemuntu wenkosi...why do you call me and keep quite! Imihlola!

Me: mama... it's me...

Thali's mom: Thali? Ufunani..?


Me: mama I was

Thali's mom: hey wena skhohlakali ndini sengane..didn't I tell you to never ever bother me with your calls? Stop harassing me marn..busy mama mama my foot..I don't have a child Mina nxa...

I stood by the electric pole and cried so much..I was not wailing..just tears were gushing down..how could my mom be so heartless? What changed between us?is she really hating me or she's pretending?

I wiped my tears and fixed myself..I continue walking to town...

Next insert to drop tomorrow morning

Enjoy your day 

[1/13, 14:26] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 25

-----THALITHA-----

After the phone call from my mother I walked to town with a sour face..like I was so devastated..each and every day I wake up praying and hoping that things were different,that maybe my mother didn't hate me..some would think she wasn't my mother and to tell you the truth I once had the same thoughts too...

But we are so alike but with her treatment,I did a DNA test without her knowing of course and guess what? She's my mother..the biological one...

I walked to MacDonald and ordered one of the cheapest meal ..I have to save the little I have,I checked my bag and found an envelope...it wasn't mine..I opened it ...there were Mandela's stuck in there..I counted the money it was 50000,then there was ketter. It was from Tony...he knows I'm a street kid and I've got pride for days so with this money he was asking if I could get a decent place and get a proper job..

I cried ..I cried so much because I didn't know what have I done to deserve so much kindness from him.. out of all the men I've been with or seen they haven't shown me this kindness..

I wiped my tears and waited for my order.. after eating I ordered a large milkshake just thinking about where to from here...

-----TONY -----

I had just put Saint to sleep..yooh this child will be the death of me..the way she talks so much at her age...ai no...

I went downstairs to finish up some work while waiting on Kimberly to come back ..

I wonder how's Thalitha? Did she saw the money? Is she alright? The door opened and Kimberly walked in with two pizzas and drinks

Kim: hey baby I am back...how's my nunu..I hope she didn't give you trouble

I went to her and kissed her taking one box from her..

Me: oh well she is ok..just talks a lot ..

Kim:(giggles) I know right...yooh your kid can talk Tony ai no...I would just give her a cellphone to play games to shut her up

Me: no wonder she was crying for my phone..you got her used to it...

Kim: yeah well I'm thinking of getting her one of those cheapest phone you know ..like a J2 or something...

Me: uh..uh..Kim you not getting my kid a phone.. finish

Kim: ok then.. anyways how are you?

Me: well okay..just a bit tired...

Kim: where's that girl I found you with earlier?

Me: actually it's her that I'm worried about hey..

Kim: ok...what's up?

I told her what I know about her..

Kim: yooh babe I wonder what could be the reason for a beautiful girl like her to be on streets..but you have helped her with the money .I'm proud of you. You have a good heart..I'm blessed to be your woman

Me:(blushing? Stop it..you make me blush

Kim:(laughing) oh my God he's actually blushing! Hahaha well really though..let's just hope she will consider your offer and come back to work at your club...

Me: well enough about Thali..come here...

I brought her closer and kissed her..she put her pizza box aside and got on top of me pulling her dress off...damn she was not wearing any panties...that got me so hard...

----- THALI -----

I finished my milkshake and got out..I need to find a flat to rent..just for this month while I cook something to do...

I was walking on this back street..I passed by a group of guys..8 to be precisely smoking weed and playing cards... I had my hoodie on ..

I was a bit away from them. When I heard them following me. I picked up the pace they did too...I knew I was in deep shit ..

I took a wrong street why the hell did I use this passage? I took my phone and dialed Tony...I've save his number...it rang a couple of times before picking up

Tony: hello..

Me:(panicking) Tony it's Thalitha I need your help please...

Tony: Thalitha...what's wrong?

Me: I'm being followed by a group of guys and I am scared..

Tony: shiit ok don't do anything stupid I will ask my girlfriend to track your location I'm coming...

I hung up and put my phone on my breasts..this is an iPhone5s I'm not ready to lose it

I heard one pulling me by hair backwards...

Nyaope boy1: hey wena kunini sikubiza awuzwa .

Me: I had lot on my mind..nifunani?

Nyaope 2: hey guys niyamuzwa lo cheesy uthini?

Nyaope3: asimthatheni simyise phalamende simkhiphe le atchaar

Me: no please guys uxolo..you can take anything you want just don't hurt me please...

Nyaope 1: hai marn Sabelo why are you negotiating with this bitch? Asimasheni madoda

They roughly picked me up. I wasn't going to go away without a fight...it's so bad that this passage is so quite because people fear walking this side because of nyaope boy's...

I kicked the other hard on his balls and punched the other one on his mouth...

Their leader pulled out a knife I knew kuzoshuba manje...he grabbed me rough and stabbed me on my arms as I was protecting my face...

Within a minute I was on the floor..they were kicking me all over beating me..while others were emptying my bag...

Their leader asked that they undress me..I was bleeding badly on my nose From the punches and my arms where I was stabbed...

They stripped me naked and forcefully stretched my legs apart giving him an access to my vagina...

My cries fell into deaf ears as he was busy pumping me hard breathing heavily on top of me...he pulled out and splashed his sperms on my face...

The second one got on top of me too...that time the other one forced his dirty cock on my mouth I threw up..I got a punch for that...while the other guy was busy fucking me I heard multiple gunshots being fired..I closed my eyes thinking that I'm dead...

The guy who was fucking me fell on top of me bleeding from his head...the others dropped like potatoes...

I looked around and saw Tony and Kim holding guns rushing to me..then it was lights out for me

*

*

*

I woke up hours later..my body was so painful...I couldn't open my eyes..they were so heavy..I forced them open and realised I was at the hospital...scenes of what happened came back running on my mind...I had no voice to cry because my throat was so painful from all the chocking they did on me..I just shed tears...

I saw Tony moving to me .he was so worried...

Tony: im so sorry we came late... we had to get someone to look after Saint...

Deep down I was actually glad that they showed up.. because if they didn't I was going to be gangraped by 8 guys... although two had already did that...I tried moving my hands but they were so painful I remembered that I was stabbed hard on them while I was protecting my face...

Tony: Kimberly went out to get you clothes and toiletries..when you get discharged you coming to live with me..no negotiating about that . The last time I gave you a choice you got yourself in trouble...

Again tears just rolled down on my face...I forced a voice out...

Me: thank you bhuti Tony.. where is my bag?

Tony: oh here ..but they took your money and cellphone. The other things are still here..three of them run away. The rest are dead...

I said thank you again and kept quiet..a door opened and Kimberly walked in....she was a very beautiful white lady..for the first time I'm seeing umlungu ome kahle so..no offense but Kim has booty,boobs,tighs and legs to die for ...

Kim: hey babe sorry I took long

She kissed her man

Tony: it's ok..our patient is up...

She looked my way and smiled coming to me...

Kim: hey sweetheart how are you? Sorry I know that might be the stupid question to ask..but I'm sorry to meet under these circumstances..I'm Kimberly Moon.. Tony's girlfriend and baby mama...

I smiled...she was friendly like her man..I now know that they are good people...

Me: I'm Thalitha..

Kim: pleased to meet you Thali..well I got you toiletries, clothes and pyjamas and pads...oh and a new cell phone

Me:oh thank you so much guys .I don't know how can I ever repay you for your kindness...

Tony: just stop this stubbornness..dust yourself up..keep your head high and work on yourself...

Me: after today I will do anything you guys want me to do..I owe that at least

They looked at each other and looked at me..

Kim: well..how about you go back to UJ and finish your course? Babes I believe that you are pretty good with this drawing of yours..so instead of working..Tony and I will pay for your fees..get you everything you need and you study hard...

Me:no guys I can't allow you to do that ..you have done a lot for me already..

Tony: well you insist..you said you will do anything..and this is what we want you to do...

Me: yooh guys thank you so much hle..I don't know what to say ..

Kim: well..you are now my little sister and I've got you ok?

I just smiled..he hugged me a bit careful not to hurt me...

The doctor walked in and looked at me smiling...

Doctor: so good to see you up and chatting..you are one hella strong lady...how are you?

Me: I'm in pains but I'm grateful to be alive

Doctor: well we did some tests on your... few ribs are broken and it's going to take a while to heal...your jaw too but I'm surprised you are talking... your nose..I will suggest you do a surgery because they did a number there..

Well on the sexual encounter you just got an infection but it will be over a few days...

On hiv and pregnancy the results came back negative...

I was shocked I was HIV negative..the way I've been so careless..I was sure as hell that I've got aids .

-----TWO MONTHS LATER -----

-----NARRATED-----

Thalitha was recovering well...Kim and Tony paid for her nose and face surgery to remove the scars...her arms were healing and she was now able to walk without support...

She was living with Tony and Kim who temporarily moved in..they arranged A therapy session for her that was helping her deal with all the trauma...

Her and Saint were Bonding so well..they were even teaching her about God and encouraging her to come to church with them..

Today it was her birthday party..they invited few close friends and family..the Roberts and Moons..

Thali: I would like to take this opportunity to thank you so much for organising this..I last celebrated my birthday when I was 14 years old ..

Sis Kim and bhuti Tony,thank you so much guys for taking me in and giving me so much love and a second chance in life and success..I will forever be grateful to you guys

And to everyone who made this be a success..thank you

The part went well...the guests finally left...Kim's mother Rachel came to her...

Rachel: you are strong my baby.. I love your courage..don't hesitate to call me whenever you need anything..could be a mother's advice or anything..I'm here ..

She felt emotional..she just hugged her so tight with tears rolling...

Thali:thank you so much.. God bless you

Rachel:be good ok..we are leaving now go rest...

-----THE FOLLOWING DAY -----

-----TONY-----

I'm so happy that everything went well...now what's left is for Thali to do her driver's license so that she can drive her Audi A3 bought by Seth as a gift..I'm glad at how my brothers have supported this event...

I walked to the kitchen and found the ladies chatting...

Me: morning girls

Kim: hey baby

Thali: bhuti Tony

Me: what are you discussing so early?

Thali: well today we will go the university about me going back..im so excited...

Me: I can tell..but isn't a bit early to go back?I mean have you recovered well?

Thali:(rolling her eyes) Kim speak to your man..im fine really.. staying the whole day doing nothing will drive me crazy I swear.. besides the second semester will start soon so please I need to be in class next semester...

Me: okay I was just making sure that you are ok...go take a bath then we will go have some breakfast ...

Thali: do you guys ever cook in this house? The past two months we have been eating out everyday ..if we are not ordering in we eating out...

Kim: well honey, we do buy grocery but I really don't have time to cook..ever since Tony's maid resigned the one that cooks, we haven't really had time to look for another one...

Thali: well worry not because there won't be any need to hire someone to cook anymore..I will cook...

Let me take a quick shower I will fix something quickly

She said getting off from her chair going to her bedroom...Kim and I looked at each other smiling

Kim: looks like madam is a woman of many talents hey

Me:looks like..while she's making breakfast how about we have proper breakfast in bed?

Kim:(smiling shyly) Tony

Me:(grabbing her hand) come on...

-----A month later -----

-----KIM -----

I was now back at the office full time..since Thali made a quick recovery and back at school..I was now able to focus on work...

I really like her..she's smart and has a good heart...I'm glad she's picking up her life and making something better out of it...

We have grown so close especially with my mother too..she take her as her second daughter..I get why she's bonding with her so much..my mother hasnt always been ok.. especially when she lost my brother at the age of 5 so yeah..

I'm a Financial accountant at Bidvest bank and I must say my work is very demanding..I was checking up on the books since the this other guy was holding ropes for me while I was on leave...

I heard a knock and he walked in...Musa..he was gorgeous..not yellow..not too dark .just in-between..one of the good guys left...

Me: oh Musa,the guy I was looking for...

Musa: what's up?I hope there's no problem?

Me:not really I just need some clarification on some numbers here...

Musa: ok let me see...

He walked over to my chair I stood up and he sat down...

Thali walked in..her bubbly personality on steroids today..she was wearing the shortest bum short ever.. with a white long shirt.....she had put on some curly weave..make up done pretty well..I'm such a good teacher..she looks hot.. I'm sure she's turning heads at the University

Thali: hey sis...I brought you some lunch...I know you lazy to cook and you probably busy to go out ..worry not..T here has you covered...

She noticed Musa who was looking at her smiling..she smiled too composing herself..

Thali: oh hi there..sorry I didn't realize you had company...I'm Thali, her younger sister..

Musa:(smiling) oh really..I didn't know Kim had a sister..a gorgeous one at that...I'm Musa

Kim:(clears my throat) mhmm Musa please give us a moment...

Musa:sure... pleased to meet you Thali

Thalitha just winked at him while he walked away...I sat down smiling..she did too .

Thali: you are so greedy ..

Me: what have I done now?

Thali:why the hell you never told me that you work with such hot guys?

Me: oh my God Thali I'm not doing this with you..leave Musa alone..he's a good guy.. you will corrupt him

Thali:(laughing) I'm so hurt you know..he's so yummy damn

Me: Thali ai no..stop.. what happened to the lecturer you were seeing few days ago?

Thali:(rolling her eyes taking out the food) Andile..you won't believe that moron sis..

Me: (I took the food and started digging) What has he done now.?

Thali: he's a two minutes noodle.. imagine me ..a whole Thali standing for that bullshit...sis he's such a waste you know..big dick..looks then that..I have advised him to go see men's clinic

I nearly choked on my food...I was laughing like crazy...

Me: no you didn't tell him that...

Thali:well I did

She took her phone and showed me their conversation..damn my sister is Savage.. the poor guy ended up blocking her...

Me:damn you are so Savage...

Thali:so are you going to hook me up with Musa? Please this one is a potential husband...

Me:no Thali I can't afford you hurting my colleague please play away from my work place...

Thali:I won't hurt him I promise

Me:it's a no from me...

I received a WhatsApp message...

Me:it's Amber.. she want us to catch up some drinks after work.. want to come?

Thali:oh hell no honey your best friend doesn't like me so I will pass

Me: because she overheard you calling her fake...

Thali:(covering her mouth) OMG..she heard that? But she's fake.. everything about her is fake so I'm not surprised..truth hurts...

Me:well I will be hanging out with her then..

Thali: make sure you let Tony know about that ..

Me:why? It's not like I need his permission to go out...

Thali: and I'm not saying that.. just to show that you respect him and acknowledge his presence...

Me: I've been with this man for like 5 years ..I never felt the need to tell him about my whereabouts or who I'm with..I will not start now..

Thali:ok..I was just suggesting

We spoke about her school work then I walked her out.. she was busy asking which one is Musa's office..thank God he didn't tell her his surname because we passed it right in front of her .. she got on her car..we hugged and she drove away

I finished up work and parked my things preparing to see Amber. On my way out I bumped into Musa...

Musa: leaving already...

Me:yeah I'm done here.. needed anything?

Musa:uhm not really..tell me your sister...

Me:(laughing) forget it Musa,it's not happening...

Musa: come on Kim...

Me:bye Musa,see you tomorrow

I walked away and got in my car and drove straight to the restaurant where Amber was at... she was already there.. dressed on her pink shortest dress that revealed her cleavage...her make up well done...

She saw me and got up hugging me...

Amber: hey babe

Me:hey love..

We sat down and ordered our meal catching up about our jobs, both Amber and I were mother's, she's a widow..

Amber: where is that brat you call a little sister...

Me: home.. when are you two going to end this? It's been going on for some time now ..

Amber: I just don't like her ...I'm even surprised you trust her around Tony alone..that kid hardly cover her body.. and she's sexy as fuck

Me: well I trust my man

Amber: ok..don't come to me crying when this little brat snatch your man right under your nose.. infact why are you and Tony not married?

Me:yoo Amber we are not ready.. marriage is not an achievement to me..and besides you know I dated Tony while he was still building his empire..it's only picked up last year..so I won't breath down his neck to marry me.

Amber: okay..

There was an awkward silence..two white gentlemen walked to our table..they were so hot.. dressed on expensive suits .

Guy1: hi im Theo and this is Marcus my friend..can we join you ladies?

I wanted to say no..but Amber said why not..they joined us... Theo and Amber hit it off from one go

Marcus:hey. You good

Me:I'm fine

Marcus: this place is getting crowded.. do you want us to go somewhere more private?

I looked around Amber was now dancing with Theo and I was getting bored...

Me:sure

He took my bag paying the bill and we walked out of the restaurant...

I sported his Ferrari packed..

Marcus: you can drive after me or we can fetch your car later?

I thought for a moment..

Me:we can fetch it later

We got on to his..it was so beautiful and comfortable..we packed on a hotel

Marcus: this is my hotel.. when I'm in the country I live here.. come let me show you around...

We walked in hand in hand exploring the hotel..it was beautiful indeed..we finally got to his suite .. president suite I tell you...

Marcus: do you want a drink or anything to eat?

Me: a drink will be fine

He went and poured us and came back sitting next to me...we drank our drink talking he was a funny guy..I was laughing... the next thing he was looking on my eyes..I was looking at his ..we kissed.. one thing led to another we had sex...I cheated on Tony for the first time in my life...I was glad he used a condom but damn I felt so dirty

I sat on bed covering my body with sheets tears rolling down my face .he got back with food

Marcus:baby why are you crying? The sex that bad?

The sex was hot infact it was good..but not compared to my man's...

Me:no it's not that..I need to call my friend..

Marcus:ok will give you some privacy

He kissed my cheek and left..I grabbed my phone and called Amber..it's rang so long before she picked up...

Amber:bitch I'm having sex you are disturbing me

Me:I messed up...oh my God I messed up..

Amber:whoaah slow down what are you on about?

Me:I slept with Marcus...

Amber:no you did what? Shit Kim you don't do that!!

Me:I know, now it's 9pm midnight I'm not home what do I do?

Amber: Take a shower get rid of all evidence..go home and make love to your man..

Me:whaat?no come on I can't do that...

Amber: Kim I know it's bad when you do it's for the first time but babe you need to get home...

She hung up on me...I sighed and got up from bed and went to take a shower.. scrubbing my body so hard getting rid of his smell...

Got dressed and met him coming in...

Me:hi today was great but I need to be home..

Marcus:ok I understand.. your car?..

Me:I will get it tomorrow now I will request an Uber ..

Marcus:I can drive you home..

Me: no I will be fine...

I walked out and my Uber was waiting... within 30 minutes I was home ..

I walked in and lights were on..I opened the fridge and took some water... Thali came downstairs wearing her gown.. she was shocked seeing me

Thali:sis you ok?

Me:no.. where is Tony?

Thali:in the club..he left here around 6 saying I should tell you that he will be locking up because there's a performance ..

Oh thank heavens for that...I was so scared...

Me:oh that's great .. good night..

Thali:you showered?

I stopped dead on my tracks...she came in front of me...

Thali: Kimberly.. stop whatever you are doing...you are an immature Tony will catch you fast on this game ..

She walked away after that...I sighed and went to our bedroom..I took off my clothes and got on my sexy lingerie and took a snap sending it to Tony...

Then a message came through..I thought it was him but it read as follows..." I had a great time with you..I'm sorry you had to leave..I hope you ok"..I just typed I'm fine .and tossed my phone aside.. how did he get my number because I didn't give him? Nxxx Amber!!

I got up so frustrated wanting to call her .then Tony called..I cooled down and answered

Me:baby..

Tony:damn don't sleep I'm coming home..

Me:(smiling)ok baby...

Next episode to drop tomorrow

Enjoy and don't forget to comment

Much love ❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️❤️

[1/15, 11:11] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 26

-----THALITHA -----

I woke up early today just to prepare breakfast for the family..it's the little I can do especially to everything that they have done for me..

I was so convinced that the world is full of evil people.. that no one really gives a damn..I had this belief that I'm all alone..till Tony and Kim came along and showed me real kindness and love

I'm so disappointed at how Kim is playing Tony...I know these things and I've been with married men before..there's no way she could have came home all showered if she hasn't been misbehaving

I wonder how the hell did she get to do this..Tony is a good man..he doesn't deserve this...

They both came down shortly after I've finished setting the table.. they look happy..I wish it could remain like that forever...

Me: good morning family I hope you are hungry

Kim: morning sis I'm so famished..

Tony: you have to .I mean after last night and this morning performance...

Kim hit him on his arm playful I just smiled

Me: y'all forget there's a kid in this room please behave

They just laughed and digged in on the food.. Tony complimented my skills and told us that he will be fetching Saints from Rachel today since it's Friday to spend a weekend with her

He left first leaving me and Kim alone...

Kim: Thali about last night...

Me: yeah look Kimberly you are an adult ok? It's really none of my business what you do..but I want to warn you about the danger you are about to embark on...

You are playing a good man for what?

Kim:(embarrassed) I don't know what came over me really..I've never done this before..one minute we were having drinks with Amber the next these guys came to us..it's all happened so fast...

Me: i see..how old are you Kim?

Kim: 26

Me: yet you act so 16..open your eyes and stop being naive...

I'm off to get ready for school

I left her there and went to my bedroom..I took my phone and dialed Rachel, Kimberly's mom

Rachel: finally someone remembers me...

Me:(laughing? Hawu mom I was going to call you really . I've just been busy settling in and all that

Rachel: I am just kidding my baby I know .how are you?

Me: I'm good mom.. actually couldn't have been better

Rachel: I'm so happy for you love..how's my daughter?

Me: actually mom she's the reason I'm calling..

Rachel: is everything ok?

Me:yes..tell me what do you think of that friend of hers.. Amber?

Rachel:I don't like that girl one bit..I still don't understand how come they are friends because they are so different..what has she done?

Me: thank goodness m you share the same sentiments with me..well she hasn't done anything just my gut don't trust her...

Rachel: you will let me know if something happens right?

Me: most definitely mom..let me get ready for school

I hung up and wore my grey ripped skinny jeans, sandals and off shoulder peach crop top shirt...

I grabbed my bag and left the room ...looks like Kim has already left so I locked the doors and drove away...

-----KIM. -----

I arrived at work so damn tired...I was on flat shoes today..I really went overboard on bed last night..I guess I was trying to ease my guilty conscience by giving him the best sex...

I got on my desk and started working hard...

Musa knocked on my door..he looked so hot on his Navy and white attire

Musa: hey you

Me: hey what's up

Musa: nix just checking on you..u grand?

Me: yeah why?

Musa: nix you look tired..

Me: yeah well I didn't get enough sleep..

Musa: Thursday night out huh?

Me: you have no idea..

Musa: well get some energy drink babes because we have a meeting in two hours

What the hell!!! Oh no! No wonder he's dressed so smart..and I'm here on flat shoes..I'm going to look like a clown..how did I forget this? I have a serious presentation to do..I can't mess it up after being away so long on leave..

Me: Musa my dear brother please stand in for me? I really can't go there today I'm not feeling too good

Musa: I can..on one condition...

Me: name it..any..

Musa: give me your sister's number...

Me: ok fine I will

Musa :now Kim

Me: geez ok..

Musa: another thing.. you need to leave.. we'll report you sick

Me: ok thanks

I took my phone and forwarded him Kim's numbers and took my things driving out.. luckily most people were not in so I ran away...

On my way home I received a phone call from Amber ..

Amber: baby girl

Me: hey doll

Amber: ok you sound a bit down what's up?

Me: I'm such a mess

Amber: ain't you supposed to be at work?

Me: no I left I'm not feeling well

Amber: ok that way meet me at the same restaurant and let's catch up for breakfast and you will tell me more about what's troubling you

I thought for a while then said sure and made a u turn...I mean I might be with Amber than being alone bored in that house

I was early so I ordered both of us breakfast and waited..she arrived 10 minutes later.. looking fly ..remind me to ask her how she manage this expensive life style because she resigned at work few months back

She hugged me and I filled her up what happened and so on...

Amber: friend I'm sorry...this is actually my fault..

Me:no Amber silly come on..I've just been reckless but it won't happen again...

Amber:if you say so then..I don't want to trouble you hey...

Listen..Marcus says you have blocked him everywhere?

Me: I have..he was nagging me like a love sick puppy, Tony was going to suspect something

Amber:he's sorry please give him a chance to explain

I narrowed my eyes staring at her..

Me: Amber..how do you know Marcus? Because as far as I'm concerned he was just a stranger who came to our table?

Amber:(coughing) uhm.. really I don't know him..thing is yesterday when you left with him I asked for his number from Theo just to ask where did he took you at...

Me: oh I see..then you gave him my number!

Amber: I'm sorry he was begging too much

Me: no friend don't do that..I live with Tony now..

Amber: I thought that arrangement was temporary while you were helping that brat..are you living with him full time now?

Me: I don't know..but there's nothing wrong with it..we really get along pretty well

Amber:please don't tell me that you are planning to cohabit with him?

Me: what's wrong with that?

Amber: everything..that man has to marry you to enjoy the wife benefits from you..

Me: stop with this marriage nonsense..

Amber:fine.. since you have time on your hands..how about we go to Pretoria for some shopping?

Me: why Pretoria while we have so many beautiful malls around here?

Amber:just to explore.. what do you say?

Me:it's fine but we have to get back early..my daughter is coming today

Amber: we'll be back before 3 let's go..

We paid our bills and got on Amber's car and drove away...

-----TONY -----

It was now 16:45 and Kim was not home..I'm surprised because normally on Fridays she knocks off around 2pm..where could she be possible at? And worse she knows that I am bringing Saint home

I want to call her and find out where is she but I don't want to be a nuisance.. she hasn't been late before so there might be an explanation for this

The door opened and Thali got in.. Saint got down from the couch and ran to her... Thali ran meeting her half way and picked her up.. speaking to her making those baby sounds..they really get along..

Thali:hey baby .look at you all grown

Saint being so forward did some flexing dances and they high fived

Thali:bhuti Tony...

Me:hey how was school

Thali: interesting really.. where is Kim?

Me:I was hoping maybe you can tell me?

Thali:I just got here..I don't know

Now I panicked.. what if something has happened to her..I got my phone calling her.. Thali left with Saint to her room...

Her phone rang a couple of times unanswered..I tried again this time it's sent me to voicemail..

They both came down chatting and making noise..I tried hiding my current mood..

Thali: let me start preparing supper.. what would you like to eat today?

Me: actually don't cook . let me take you guys to movies then we'll grab something to eat on our way back

Thali: sounds fun..did you find Kim?

Me:nope.. wait here I will go Change...

-----THALITHA -----

Shit Kim is doing it again! What is wrong with that bitch? I took my phone and called her..I know for a fact she's not at work..Musa told me she left very early claiming to be sick..

Her phone rang and this bitch Amber picked up...

Amber: Kim's phone hello

She sounded so wasted...

Me: it's Thalitha give Kim her phone..

Amber:. (burping) oh eix she's busy now she really can't talk..

I then heard her screaming behind and Amber giggling..how she screamed indicated to me that she was having sex..the other two voices were male voices .. clearly they are having a foursome party.. God what's wrong with Kim?!!

Me: Amber! I'm not playing with you give Kim the damn phone!!

Amber:geez don't bite me..ok hold on. I hope she will be able to talk to you

I heard her telling Kim that I'm on the line..Kim said shit and told whoever she was busy with to hold on

Kim:(trembling drunk voice) hello

Me:(angry) Kim what the fuck are you doing? Do you know the game you are playing is so dangerous?

Kim: Thali listen I can explain...

Gosh she was so wasted and now she was crying God this woman!

Me: I don't need your explanation..we are going out for movies and dinner..get your ass here...I need to see you on your bed when we come back..if you know what's good for you, you will take an Uber and come back home.. now!

Amber: hey you bitch who the hell are you to talk to my friend that way?

Me: don't fucken bullshit me bitch.you busy calling yourself a friend yet you do.....

I saw Tony coming and I quickly hung up and pretended to be taking selfies.. he looked so hot and dressed smart

Tony: ok ladies I'm done we can go

Me: I just spoke to Kim, she says she's on the way home..

I was trying to keep Tony at ease because I could tell he was getting worried

Tony: ok..at least she's alive..let's go ladies

He picked his daughter I followed behind him and texted Seth

"I need a gun.. asap"

He responded quickly because he was online

Seth" what for?"

Me: " protection"

Seth:" how soon?"

Me:" as in like yesterday"

Seth:" ok meet me in town tomorrow"

Me: " perfect..thank you"

I puy phone on my pocket and got in the car on the back seat to sit with Saint...

Read,react and comment..I need to know your opinion on each insert to be able to write another one .

Blessed day ahead 

[1/16, 23:22] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 27

-----KIM -----

I woke up with my body paining so bad..like I've never been so tired.. I slowly opened my eyes and realized that I'm not home..I'm not on my bed...shit

I sat up straight and looked around..fuck.. Marcus was next to me..Theo and Amber cuddling on the couch..

The events of yesterday came back crushing like oh my God I'm so screwed like I'm finished..

I didn't come back home..I wonder what's going on with Tony..my daughter...Thali..I'm in real shit..

What was supposed to be a harmless fun turned out to be a complete mess..we hooked up with Theo and Marcus on a club nearby after shopping the next thing we were booking.. smoking and drinking I really lost control

I need to start behaving..I don't like the way im slowly going back to the varsity days..no..

I got off from bed and quickly took a shower..I came out and got dressed taking my things..I shook Amber to wake up..she was so wasted and completely naked...

Amber: you are fully dressed shit what is the time?

Me: it's 11:36 Amber gosh I need to be home..

Amber: wait let me shower we will leave together

Me:no it's ok I will catch a taxi or call an Uber or something I really need to leave

Amber:I understand..but last night was so damn fun.. remember the old days..

Me: yeah well I really wish I could stay and chat up about last night but right now I need to go

I left the room and called up a meter taxi..it was going to be very expensive from Pretoria to joburg but I preferred paying than being on a taxi

I got home around half past 1...

I didn't find Tony..thank God..but Thali was playing with my daughter by the pool

The guilty that hit me..I went to put the bags on the house and came back..

Me:hey guys

Thali: hey...

She was not her usual bubbly self..I could tell that she's disappointed in me..I tried taking my daughter but she cling on Thali..one night away and already my daughter is rejecting me..now that hurts

Me: guys I know I messed up and I'm sorry

Thali: Kim why are you doing this?

Me:I really don't know

Thali: what is it that you are hoping to achieve huh? Why allow Amber to mess up your good relationship?

Me: she really doesn't..I mean she was trying to cheer me up after I was a mess at work

Thali:cheer you up by organising a 4some party? Kim this is the second time you are cheating on Tony...

You are really disappointing me..I trusted you and looked up to you

Me:I'm sorry..I will try and do better..

Thali:well you better..and talk to Tony.. you are hurting that man

She gave me my daughter and got up going to the house..few minutes she came out looking beautiful on her black dress

Me: going out?

Thali: yes ,Musa is taking me out so don't wait up

Me:ok.. have fun

She smiled weakly before leaving

I played with my daughter..then walked back inside...

-----TONY -----

It's Saturday and I'm supposed to be home bonding with my daughter..but I'm here in the club trying to distress..

Kim is messing me up and I really don't know why..she's not this person...im starting to believe that this Amber woman has a hand...

I need to pay her a visit and find out what her game plan is... speak of the devil.. she just walk in with two guys...

I walk up to them and greet them..

Me: everything alright?

Amber:yes.

Me: Amber..a word please

She stood up and we went to the bar

Me: what is that I hear about you taking my woman up and down...

Amber: woohoo hold it right there..how old is this woman of yours? I've never pointed a gun on her head and forced her.

Me: what do you want?

Amber:(smiling) you know I've always wanted you...but she stole you from me!

Me: Amber cut this nonsense! I never showed any interest in you .maybe you might have had a crush on me but sorry I'm into Kim and that's final

Amber: urgh shame..such loyalty..to someone who doesn't even show an ounce of it for you..too bad..

She flipped her hair and went back to the guys she was with.. she's trying to mess with me and I am not going to let her get to me..I will not...

I walked back my office and grabbed my car keys and drove home..on the way I called Thali and told her what Amber has said.. crazy little bitch..if she thinks she's going to get between me and my woman,well she got another thing coming...

I stayed few minutes on my car trying to cool down a bit before going inside...

I got in and my daughter ran up to me..I picked her up and kissed her. I called the nanny to come get her...

Me: Kim

Kim:baby

Me:you ok?

Kim:yes I'm fine..

I stood up..I wanted to talk but words failed me..I was too angry to say anything..

Kim:baby I'm sorry..

Me:(turning to face her)Kim I don't mind you going out and away with your friends but let me know.. and don't let it Interferes with our family time

Kim:(holding my hands) I know baby and I promise such behavior won't repeat itself again...

I looked at her deep and she looked a bit shaken..

Me: I'm going to hit gym

I pulled away from her hands and walked away. I took off my clothes and went to the gym to blow up the steam.. that how I release tension and anger..

I returned to the bedroom and found Kim sleeping.. shame they really had it bad last night...

Then my phone rang..it was my elder brother Shawn..

I moved away from the bed not to wake up Kim and answered..

Me: Bros

Shawn:why didn't you tell me that you and Kim have broken up?

Me: what are talking about?

Shawn:I saw her and that blonde chick yesterday at Cubana hugging and kissing with some two guys. The conclusion I made from that was the fact that you two ain't together because she wouldn't have done that

I felt my blood boiling...this can't be..not my Kim..I know she was out but Pretoria...? No .

Me: (breathing heavily) are you sure it was her? I mean..

Shawn:I knew there was a going to be a possibility for you to say this so I'm going to send you pictures

Shawn hung up and immediately two pictures popped in.. the way she was looking at him on this first pic sent shivers to my spine .on the second one it was like he was biting her ear or whispering something I'm not sure but the way she was smiling..gosh...this guy is the one that was with Amber earlier..now her words came back ringing on my head

Ok I need to get out of here before I loose my mind..I slowly walked out carefully to close the door and went to the study...on my way there I saw Thali rushing to her room..she looked like she was crying... I followed her..

-----THALI -----

My date with Musa was just amazing. apart from the fact that I was mad and disappointed at how Kim is handling her business lately. He made me laugh and smile..for a moment I forgot about everything

We finished up and he suggested we drove to his house .well I knew what was going to happen and really I didn't have a problem. After all I'm not a 90 days rule type of girl and I don't mind fucking on the first date..I mean why waste time,money and resources going on countless dates without knowing if you two can satisfy each other sexually?

We got to the house and got on it.. Musa got one hella sexy body...like the Vuyo Dabula type of body...he really got me wet..I was a little bit tipsy so I got wet easily plus he knew where to touch

He picked me up and wrapped me around his waist and we walked to the bedroom..he roughly throw me on the bed..I smirked saying " rough rider" I like it .

We undressed and he wore a condom..his dick was average and he gave me long strokes I mean deep ones..found myself digging my nails on his back holding sheets..

He ruined it all when he tied me up during dog for anal sex..I told him that shit was making me so uncomfortable but he did it anyway...he fucked me roughly on the ass till he was satisfied..like my screams and tears kinda turned him on more. I lay there after the whole process with my whole burning up..I felt so raped and violated.. he seemed to enjoy the anal sex more than the normal one

He looked at me shedding tears after the deed and stood up

Musa: babe why are you crying?

Me: Musa I told you to stop why didn't you?

Musa: babe I thought you were just tripping I mean ..

Me: do you have any idea what you have just did?

Musa: except giving you multiple orgasms I really don't understand your tears baby

Me:Musa you have just triggered my rape memories..when you tied me up and fucked me on the ass I felt powerless...

Musa:(scared) baby...I'm ..

Me: don't touch me Musa. .I even bite you just so you could let me be .. Musa you are psycho. ..

Musa: don't talk like that baby please...

Me:don't baby me! There is no music or sound here.. how can someone's cry turn you on?

He looked at me like shocked at to what I was saying..but he wasn't remorseful at all..I got up and got dressed leaving him with his hands on the head..

I drove straight to The house ..when I got in I saw bhuti Tony going to his study...

I got to my room and throw myself to bed and cuddled with a pillow.. will men ever see me as a normal human being that deserves to be loved and treasured or I will always be their sex slave to them?

I heard a knock and I quickly wiped away my tears...Tony walked in ..I faked a smile but it was not convincing..he got into bed and didn't ask anything but hold me..he hold me while I cry silently to his

shoulder and he was brushing my back...after I've calmed down I told him what happened..he was very angry and told me we should arrest him.told him no need..I'm cutting Ties with him

He then told me the shocking news ever..about Kim..I did my best to defend Kim and it's looked like it was working. I remembered what Tony told me earlier about what Amber said...nxx this bitch is becoming too much

Tony left and I took a long deserving shower..I wore my black Nike track pants..I sat down and took out the gun from the ceiling and polished it...I went by the balcony with my phone and one cigarette..well I do smoke.. especially when I'm angry

I played around her social media pages and got all the information I needed about her .by the time I was done..I have smoked 4 cigarettes

I brushed my teeth and took some chewing gum and went out..it was around 7pm

I saw Kim and Tony splitting pizza

Kim: where are you going?

Me: getting some air..don't wait up..I will be back late

Tony: be safe..call me if you need anything

I just nodded and walked away ..I passed by Tony's club and ordered few drinks..Amber was still there dancing like crazy..she didn't see me because I was at the corner but I got to see everything her and the guys were doing

Around 9 they left the club..they left with one car ..I followed them for a distance...they dropped her off at the gate and drove away.. bloody idiots .they don't even care that's she's not in the house yet ..she opened her gate and walked in busy falling and getting up

I followed her and quickly got in before the gate locked..I watched her getting in the house and got behind her

I pulled the gun on her neck and put my hand over her mouth and switched on the lights

Me: dare make any sound I'm going to shoot you..this one is a silencer..you will die nice and quiet...

She was so scared to a point that she peed herself..I threw her on the ground and stood in front of her..

Amber: oh my God!Thalitha... what are you doing here?

Me:just came to warn you to stay away from my family..Stay away from Kim do you hear me? I know your type..

It's not Kim's fault that you weren't and still not Tony's type

Get yourself a ben 10 and stop being bitter...

Amber I'm really serious..hurt Kim or Tony, you will have me to deal with...

I mean this gun is new and I would really like to test it..don't provoke me..

I know about you,your ex husband..your daughter..your sick mom.. don't provoke me..

I got up..she really looked frightened..I stepped back a bit..

Me: you tell Kim about this..I will shoot you..open the gate

I walked out and the gate opened..I drove straight to the house

I got in my room..put away the gun..just as I was preparing to get dressed in my pyjamas I heard Tony and Kim arguing on the passage...I decided to go out and check

Kim: oh there she is..!

I was dumbfounded at what was going through

Me: what's up with the noise so late guys?

Kim: don't act so dumb with us while you know what you did! Thali how dare you? How dare you threaten my friend on gun point?

The nerve of this bitch!!!

Tony: Amber called crying saying you were at her house threatening her with a gun..is that true Thali?

I swallowed hard looking at the fuming Kim with hands on her waist..

Me : yes..I wanted her to leave Kim alone because she's making her do crazy things

Kim:(furious)who died and made you my lawyer? That's my best friend!are you out of your mind? Did I tell you I need some saving?

This is why I hate helping people..you help them they think they all mighty.. you were nothing before you came here..we took you in and gave you the life that now you able to buy guns with...no wonder your mother want nothing to do with you..you such a...

Tony: Kim! That is enough!!

He was roaring at her..I just stood there trying to digest every word..no Kim didn't utter those words..she didn't! She's my sister..she loves me..she won't hurt me like that...

Kim: nxx I'm off to sleep at Amber's house.

Tony gave me an apologetic look before following her..I just sat on the floor..my body against the wall and my hands wrapped on my head...I cried...now I was letting it all out about what happened earlier..her mention of my mother touched me..

I heard them arguing then I heard a car driving out...looks like she took her kid too..I heard footsteps..Tony walked to me..he shook me up .

Tony: hey..get to bed..it's cold on these tiles

He helped me get up and followed me to my bedroom.. I sat on the bed..my heart was so painful ..

Tony: hey I'm sorry about everything..I understand why you did what you did although I'm not agreeing to it...

Me: it's fine Tony I will be fine...I'm used to this really

Tony: no Thali..no one deserves to be in so much pain ..come here

He pulled me up and we hugged for a very long time...when we pulled out..he had a reaction...I was so embarrassed I let him go..I went to open the door for him to leave..he came and closed it..

The next thing we were kissing each other hungry for each other

We got on bed and boy he wiped all the bad memories I have for sex..he was so damn good...I found myself crying to tears of joy.. although he was a bit big down there but he was really gentle...

Right now we let our bodies do the talking because we were too devastated to say any words to each other...

To be continued on the next insert

Please leave a comment so that I will know what's going on your mind and write more

Love you family !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!❤️❤️❤️❤️

[1/17, 10:13] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 28

-----KIM -----

I drove to Amber's house with nerves so high..I can't believe Thalitha..she has some nerve..I will deal with her some other time..right now I need to focus on making sure that Amber' is alright

I called her to tell I'm at the gate,she opened up for me I drove in and parked in front of the house...

I took the sleeping Saints and bags and walked inside..Amber was now on a gown..I put Saint on the guest bedroom tucking her in and went to sit next to Amber'

She had wet tissues and a wine .her face was a mess. Make up ruined , mascara all over her face because of crying..

I hugged her. My anger to Thali grew bigger..

Me:I'm so sorry friend..I didn't send her I promise you

Amber: I know..I'm just so scared...Kim that girl is not ok upstairs. I mean you are not safe. How do you live with her while she has a gun with a child around?.. I thought I was going to die.

I never thought Thali owned a gun...and Amber was right..it was not safe. Gosh im too trusting..I mean after all she's a street kid such behavior is expected from her.

Me: I'm sorry again my friend.. this won't happen again I promise to do something about this...

Amber:im so scared.. the way she ordered me to leave you alone and how aggressive she was

She dropped tears sobbing..I hugged her kissing her hair... she looked up with teary eyes and pulled my face and kissed me

I responded to the kiss and pulled out..

Me: friend we shouldn't..

Amber: please..I'm too traumatized right now.. Please help me forget

She pulled me closer her hand running on the back of my hair and attacked my lips...she hungrily kissed me...I found myself responding to it...she took off my top and I was left on my bra..she cupped them while unhooking the bra...

She smiled when she saw my tits and sucked on them..she was good with her tongue I found myself moaning...

-----THALI-----

I woke up the following morning and events of yesterday came back to my mind..shit shit shit!! What have I done? What have we done?

I moved up a bit.. Tony was sleeping peacefully next to me..gosh this man is so damn hot... I found myself smiling looking at his abs and thick eyebrows..focus Thali..this isn't time to drool...

I shook him a bit...

Me: Tony..Tony .. wake up

He lazily opened his eyes and they scanned around I'm sure he also thought of last night...he did the opposite and smiled...gosh he's so sexy

Tony: hey beautiful

Me: you need to go to your bedroom before Kim come back..

He just rolled his eyes and closed his eyes sleeping...he's testing me..I shook him up...

Me:Tony you really need to get up..listen what happened last night was amazing but ...

Tony: thank God I'm not the only one who thinks last night was great...

Me: but it can't happen again..Tony I will not be the reason you and Kim break up..she said hurtful things yesterday but I still love her..and I feel like shit for doing this to her..I've betrayed her..and two wrongs don't make a right...we can't do this again

Tony:ok yesterday was a mistake but I don't regret it..damn Thali the connection we felt..like we were both crying...

Me: yes but it can never happen again..you love her .you two are happy together..I just need to deal with Amber to stay away...

Tony: (smiling) are you sure you will be able to stay away from my dick after last night?

I found myself laughing and hitting him with a pillow

Me: gosh Tony you are so annoying..I'm serious here..get up and get out...

Tony:ok I hear you .I promise to stay away from you after you help me deal with this morning reaction please

I looked at him pulling the blankets..shit his dick was hard like a rock..I found myself biting my lips.. suddenly I was so wet...my nipples hardened so bad...

Me: ok fine this once

Tony:yes mam

I climbed on top of him and guided his dick inside my wet honey pot..it was way too big but I adjusted it and when it fitted me comfortably I started dancing on top of him... bumping and grinding him..he was cursing and playing with my tits..I remembered a trick one of my classmates once told me about that you should draw the word COCONUT using your waist while on top..I did that he grabbed me roughly by hair and met me half way pumping me too...we had a crazy blow out that we both screamed each other's names..

I lay on top of him for a moment and felt his cum oozing through my legs...

I shifted to the side and looked at him..

Me: now get out of my room...

Tony:you are so heartless.. kicking me out after such an awesome orgasms...

Me: I'm serious leave..and this never happened..if you know what's good for you

He looked at me for a long time and got up getting dressed and left the room

I stood up and went to lock the door..I checked the time it was now half past 6..I took the sheets to the laundry basket and put on clean one..I then went to take a long shower...

I wore clean pyjamas and went back to bed..it's Sunday today..I wonder if Tony will go to church....

-----AMBER -----

I looked at Kim sleeping comfortably naked on my bed and smiled..I leaned over and kissed her on the cheek ..

Last night was mind blowing...

I got up and went to take my laptop and looked at the video recorded by the spy camera that's on the lounge I smiled...

I saw her shifting I closed my laptop and went back to bed..

Me: morning sleepy head..how are you?

Kim: I should be asking you how are you?,

Me: ah silly..I'm ok.im a big girl..it's going to take more than a street kid and some illegal gun to scare me off.

Wake up..take a shower I will prepare breakfast..

Kim: ok..how's saints? I must return her to my mother's house today

Me:oh yeah..she still asleep..how about we take a bath..go out for breakfast while we go drop her off
.then we can come back..cook and catch up over some wine..then you can go home later..that's if you want to

Kim: yeah sure that's sound like a perfect Sunday chillas... besides I don't think I'm ready to meet that brat

I smiled and left her getting up..I went to Saints room..she was sleeping peacefully..I closed the door and made a phone call

Marcus: hello

Me: hey Marc what are you doing today?

Marcus: was planning to sleep the whole day nursing my hangover..what's up?

Me: mhm I think you should come to the house ..Kim is here...

Marcus: in that case I will pop in later..

Me: perfect..don't forget the sugar...you know how she loves it

Marcus: Amber..are you trying to get the poor lady addicted?

Me:(laughing?) No silly..just to spice things up..

Marcus: alright I will.. should I call Theo?

Me:no..just you...there's a show we want to give you

Marcus:(licking his lips) damn I just got hard..

Me:(giggling) see you later lover boy

I hung up and woke Saints up gently and helped her take a bath

I dressed her up.. went out to give her some cereal... Kim show up looking so hot ..I left her with her daughter and went to take a bath...

----TONY -----

I opened my eyes and I realized it was now 3pm in the afternoon...I remember I took a nap after coming from church around half past 12..

I rested back on my pillow and start thinking about what's happening on my life right now..

Truth of the matter is that i was attracted to this girl the first time she showed up on my club shot...I don't know there was something about her that caught my attention

On the other hand..I love Kim..I was even planning to propose to her..but now I'm not too sure..

Anyways let me just stop driving myself crazy with these thoughts and get up to get something to eat...it's Sunday today the house stuff is on a day off

I took off the formal clothes and wore my denim short and the vest I wore under the shirt and went to the kitchen

I'm not really a good cook but I can try...

I took out the ingredients and started cooking...

Thali appeared.. wearing a gown and her pyjamas..I must say she looks so damn sexy

Thali: what are you making?

Me: spaghetti and meatballs

Thali: haven't had one in a while..let me go take a shower..

Me:I will be done when you come back

There was door bell..I was still busy ..

Thali: I will get it

She walked to the door and opened it..I heard a male voice

Musa: can I come in?.

Thali: no .what are you doing here?

Musa: please let me in..I bought you flowers and chocolates...

Me:is everything ok there?

Thali: everything is fine...

Musa you need to go..

Musa:ok but please unblock me ke so that we can talk..

Thali:ok fine now go

She pushed him out and shut the door behind him

She took the flowers and chocolates and throw them on the bin and walked away...

Me:Thali

Thali:not now Tony please...

She walked away..I kept quiet and continue with cooking...

Read and please drop a comment..I really would like to know what you think

Enjoy and have a great day 🧡💖💖💖

[1/17, 21:48] Thembelihle: In our lives..we often meet the Amber type..the type that will lead you astray indirectly...

The type that will say and do things as if they care whereas what they really want is to destroy you

We do see signs but I think we are too ignorant and naive to notice them...be on some bs that "she's my friend of years she can't do that" well I'm sorry to break it to you but the betrayal doesn't come from strangers and enemies only..it's comes from the people we confide in,trust with our lives and business

I'm not saying all friends are bad and all that but yooh guys..open your eyes and question some of the decisions your friend put you through

Learn to say NO without explaining yourself..ungabi nguvuma zonke nje..have some back bone..and heal from the "abantu bazothini" syndrome because it is the mostly deadly disease that's killing us..

We fear to stand up to people and situations because we care what people will say..well I'm saying tonight screw them

Do what is right,safe and good for you..

Goodnight my people

Peace and light to you and your family this night



[1/21, 11:35] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 29

---- THALITHA -----

After Musa came to the house I really didn't feel too good..all the things he did to me came flooding to my mind..im such a disappointment ...how do I sleep with two guys in 5hours apart?

Either way it's happened and there is no use to cry about it..I just need to make sure it doesn't happen again..

I finished up and wore my long pyjamas and went downstairs.. Tony has dished up .I looked at the time it was around 6pm and still there was no sign of Kim.. she's really playing with fire this one

The aroma of the food made me smile...I sat down enjoying being served..we ate in awkward silence...I decided to break it

Me: this is nice . you really not bad..

Tony: (smiling) if someone who's good with cooking like you compliments my cooking then I'm happy

I just smiled..but why are good men like Tony taken? Mxm ai then we are left with the morons..ai God you know how to punish us

Me: Tony I need to ask you something..

Tony: okay what is it?

Me: can I use the room at the roof top for my paintings? Like sort of gallery so..I love it because the sun in the morning makes colours look good and in the afternoon and evening the same

Tony: okay you can use it..it's empty anyways

Me: thank you.. tomorrow I will bring stuff and start to paint ...it's been a while and I miss it ...

Tony: seeing you so commitment and excited about your work makes me happy..so what are you going to paint?

Me: not sure yet.. we'll see

Tony: okay

We finished eating I took the plates to kitchen and put them on the sink and washed them..Tony was drying them..

Then he splashed water on my face...

Me:(laughing) no you didn't..

I opened a tap and sprinkled some on his face too..he was running around the kitchen and finally grabbed me by my waist and hide behind me..I couldn't anymore..then he tickled me..yooh I don't like to be tickled

Me:(laughing tears coming out) Tony please stop..okay I'm sorry please stop tickling me..

Tony: promise me that you will give me a kiss then I will stop

Me: what no you crazy ..

Tony: ok then

He tickled me harder..I was on the floor he was on top I was crying..

Me: okay fine.. just a little

He devoured my lips with his .with our heavy breathings it got deeper .his body pressed against mine..I felt his dick growing on his pants. I felt my self getting wet . ..again I wanted him so badly..

He read my body language and breathing...he started touching me. His hand went to my pyjama pants..I was not wearing any panty ..he rubbed my vagina then inserted his finger in my nana my breathing pattern changed and I moaned on his mouth .

Tony: damn baby you are so wet...

He dragged my pyjamas off I helped him remove his pants ..his big dick sprang out free...

He rubbed the tip of it on my entrance while staring into my eyes.. he pushed half of it I moaned...he kept on shoving it till I felt his balls hitting me..he then began to thrust..this time he gave it me fully and deep...

I dug my nails deeper on his back .this was so damn good..he picked up my leg to his shoulder and gave it to me hard..I've already came twice and he was still giving me more...

Me: it's your turn now baby...come on....

Tony: you want me to come baby?..

Me: yes..come for me baby please...

Tony: you want my cum?..

Me: yes please..oh gosh

He thrust deep then we both groaned in pleasure as he released on me emptying his seed on me..the were so warm.....

We were actually vibrating..he kissed me..

Tony: what the fuck are you doing to me woman?

Me: I have no idea and I know this won't end nice but I aim to enjoy it while it's last..

I got up and picked my things and run to my bedroom..how I managed to run after being fucked this hard..it's still a miracle...

He got behind me and closed the door locking it...

He grabbed me and made me hold the bed at the edge of it while kneeling...he opened my butt cheeks and inserted his dick inside me and began pumping me...

I moaned senseless enjoying every thrust...

----- AMBER -----

We finished cooking and dished up eating..we were sharing the meal over some good wine I got from a friend of mine

Kim was getting tipsy and she can't handle her alcohol this one..there was a knock on the door I went to open... Marcus walked in.. looking all handsome

Me: looking hot .come in .

He followed me to the lounge where Kim was watching this show..

Marcus:hey Kim..didn't know you were around. Was passing by to say hi to Amber and actually saying goodbye.. I mean I'm leaving soon

He was lying. .just a story we cooked up so that she doesn't suspect a thing .

Kim:oh didn't know you were leaving soon

Marcus: what. You are going to miss me?

Kim just blushed.. I dished up for him we sat down chatting and laughing it was really a good moment..after he ate he took out the drug and his card putting it on the table

Kim: oh gosh it's like you read my mind.. I so need this right now ..

Marcus: easy tiger. Let me cut if for you ...

Marcus did his magic then gave her the card after taking one line and rested his back on the couch...

Kim smoked I followed..we all rested on the couch listening to the drug taking on our bodies

Kim: damn I feel so good right now...

Marcus: oh yeah .I'm so horny baby

Kim looked at his pants. Indeed he was..she moved her hand and massaged the dick in his pants..

Marcus: let me take it out for you baby .

Marcus removed his pants and Kim kneeled down giving him a blow job..this scene was making me horny so I moved closer to Marcus and kissed him...he kissed me back while his hand was brushing and grabbing Kim's hair

I pulled out from the kissing and got naked..I got up and sat on his face while I balanced with the couch and his shoulders...he ate my pussy while Kim sucked on his dick

He was really good with his tongue I felt my body building up. I was so close to coming when Kim's moans fueled me ...

I looked over my shoulder she was naked and bouncing on top of Marcus dick.. fuck she didn't put on a condom .well we'll fix this in the morning..

We made Marcus to lay down and take over the whole process of fucking him hard...this is so going to make me money on porn hub...

----TONY -----

My phone vibrated under the pillow...I took it and switched the alarm off..shit it 5 am already.. time really flies when you are having fun

I looked at Thali who was sleeping peacefully next to me and smiled..last night was so amazing..I could get used to this... slowly but surely Im falling for her. I mean I didn't even realize that Kim didn't come back since she left Saturday night

I need to make a decision fast .I can't keep two women I'm shagging under one roof..and I don't want to sleep with both of them same time...

I moved between her legs and muffed her...she woke up to my mouth eating her pussy..she moaned in her sleep and that was such a huge turn on

I muffed her good till she released on my mouth..I then got up behind her and entered her slowly...

We made sweet slow love while she pushed back to my dick with her ass as I went in to her deep...

I released inside her and took the towel wiping both of us then I got dressed she went back to sleep

Me: what time is your first class?

Thali: around 9

Me: ok I will send you some money when I get to work to buy your stuff..

Thali: you don't have to....

Me: I wasn't asking you...see you later..have a great day

I kissed her forehead and left her bedroom

I walked to mine..I put my phone on charger and went to the gym

I hit the treadmill hard and did 50 push ups

When I finished it was half past six..I took a shower here and walked to my bedroom with a towel wrapped around my waist..the stuff have arrived and they were cleaning already

I got to my room and took out my blue and white suit..today I'm going to the site of my construction company..I heard the workers are threatening to put the tools down .I need to sort them out .then I will go meet with suppliers after that

I finished dressing up and went to eat breakfast...today it was prepared by my stuff because Thali who usually does was sleeping..shame she must be tired from all the workout we were doing. Which reminds me. Let me send her the money now before I forget because I will really have a busy day

Normally it's Kim who sort her pocket money and money for her necessity but after the stunt she pulled Saturday I guess I should take over...

I transferred her R10k hoping it's going to be enough for the whole month

I checked the time it was half past 7.. still Kim was no where to be seen..and I should get going..I called my mother in law to speak to my daughter..I actually wanted to find out if she's there..

I realized she dropped my daughter off around 9 am..wow so she couldn't even spend some time with her daughter...

I called her..this time I was seriously angry...she picked up after 5th ring..her voice husky and sleepy

Kim: hello

Me: Kim...you still sleeping at this time?do you know which day is it today?

Kim: oh fuck! Oh God I'm so late...Amber why didn't you wake me up. Oh my God

I just hung up .I'm seriously not going to be late entertaining this madness

I took out my Audi out from the garage and drove away .. along the way I received a text from Thali thanking me for the money saying she will pass by the club after her classes..I got so excited..it's been a while since I've been this happy..yes I have money but I wasn't really happy...

I replied telling her I can't wait ..

I proceeded to my meetings....

-----THALI-----

I was woken up by my phone's notification..when I checked it was the bank notifying that Tony deposited 10k to my account...

I had a little money left from my pocket money Kim used to give me. But this one will last me a quite little longer...

Maybe I should buy a lingerie and wore it when I'm paying him a visit later.

I logged on my Instagram and my favorite girl..I mean she's my role model .I love her..one day I wish I could see her in person..she's kind ..Thando Kings has sent me a message saying her and hubby are in jozi we could meet up for some lunch

I jumped up and down on my bed so excited that I replied saying most definitely we will

She then gave me her numbers to call her around 15:00

Oh my day couldn't get more better than this? I woke up to an amazing orgasms..bank notification now my favorite girl has agreed to meet me..heey this can't get more better

I got up and went to take a shower I should be in class soon

I walked out to the stuff cleaning my bedroom and taking the laundry and changing sheets

I greeted her making small conversation then she left..I finished dressing..I applied my make up so perfect my eyebrows on fleek.deep dark mascara and eyeliner...put on my 22 curly lace weave..nude lipstick..I put on a spot bra then my short denim jumpsuit and sandals..I love summer.. because I got to show off my long legs...

I went to the kitchen for some food..I bumped to Kim who was messing the whole place down arranging things

Guilty overcame me when I remembered the things I did with Tony this past two days..and the fact that I was planning on continuing to open my legs for him .he was right..its so hard staying away from his dick after testing it..

Me: morning sis

Kim': hey Thali..this is definitely not a good morning hey..im so late and so tired..like I'm a such a mess

I could tell..her make up,hair was just all over the place..they marks under eyeballs showed she never had enough sleep

Me:let me help you

I started helping her fix her hair..then make up .told her to put more powder to hide those eyeballs...I made her a smoothie while putting her things on her bag...

She was done and looking presentable at long last...

Kim:(smiling) thank you ..you such a lifesaver..listen I'm late now we will talk later ok? But before I go I want to say I'm sorry about the things I said Saturday..I panicked and I...

Me: it's ok..I understand.. you should get going before you become more late

Kim: sure..have a great day

Me: you too

She took her things and left..I sat down and enjoyed the breakfast the stuff prepared..

I was done I got my things and headed to my first class,along the way busy debating with my thoughts whether I should stop what I'm doing with Tony or what .

I got to class and went to sit on for my lecture..I realized that most people we're so glued to their phone not paying attention

I finished my class and went to the cafeteria and the same thing was happening..people we're gathered in groups showing each other videos...

I asked some girl to show me what is so trending

Girl: girl you are so behind..so this Queen of sluts released her latest two sex tapes and they are so hot ..

Me:Queen of sluts? Who's that?

Girl: it's this godmother who runs the lit strip club here in sandton..

Me: what? Really?

Girl: yeah..so check this out .so damn hot..which I could have a friend that I would things like this with her

I took the phone and looked at the first video I nearly throw up...Kim and Amber were making out on her lounge.. although she tried to blur her face but the tattoo on Kim's left arm gave it away...the second video it was their threesome

I covered my mouth in shock..on this second video Kim was like she's possessed...

My God! This is what she's been up to the whole weekend..I felt my body vibrating...I wonder if Tony know about this...has he seen it

I gave the girl her phone back and called Tony..it's rang twice and he picked up...

Tony: miss me already?

Me:(my throat became Dry instantly) urhm erh...

Tony: Thali you ok?

Me: yes I'm fine..I was just wondering if you done so that I can bring you lunch...

Tony:I'm driving to the club now I will be having my lunch around 1

Me: okay..see you then

Tony: are you ok? You sound weird..like you panicking..

Me: I'm fine

I hung up and closed my eyes and took my car keys and drove to Kim's work...I arrived and badged into her office..she was busy with musa over some work

Me: Musa can you give me and my sister some time to talk

Musa looked at me I could see he was scared I will tell Kim..and I was really not there

He took his things and left us...

Kim: what's up? I warned you about coming here unannounced..I'm really busy trying to catch up on some work...

I took my phone and gave it to her..

Me: there look ..

Kim: what am I looking at... whaaaat! No it's can't be..oh my God...

Me: oh my God my left foot...Kim you are so stupid! Very stupid!

Do you know how many people have seen this..check the views.. Amber is rolling on cash now... congratulations girl ..you are our mzansi's Kim Kardashian...

I grabbed my phone from her and walked out I saw Musa..

Musa: Thali can we please talk

Me: not now Musa

Musa: when then because I really want to fix things

Me: weeh ai muntu wenkosi khawundiyeke..I'm not interested in speaking with rapist are you that dumb?

He got scared and looked around..his other colleagues were watching he grabbed my arm rough...

Musa: are you crazy.. how can you blurt that out on my work place? In front of my colleagues?

Me:(I pushed him away rough freeing myself from him) which part I don't want to talk to you don't you get? Follow me around again I might have you arrested..qhubeka nje ungisukele

I fixed my hair and run out to my car..my second class is starting soon I need to get back...

As I was driving out I saw Tony's Audi driving in with a speed ..he didn't see me..oh no..no ...no .I parked outside the gate and called Kim...

She picked up her voice you could tell she was crying...

Me:brace yourself,Tony is coming up

Kim:whaat?

Me:I just saw him driving in as I was driving out...

I hung up.. at least I've warned her...

To be continued on the next insert

Guys please like

My foreigner;his love

page

I will be posting there soon a new story



[1/22, 06:35] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 30

-----KIM -----

I can't believe that this is happening to me.. somebody please wake me up...how can Amber do this?

Now it's all coming back, it's make sense why Thalitha didn't like her..but to expose me like that? This won't only ruin my reputation, but my kid's one,. Tony..yooh I don't want to start thinking about that one...

I picked up my office phone and dialled Amber, I knew with my own number she won't pick up..

Amber: hello

Me: Amber how could you?..

Amber: argh it's you...

Me: don't you dare hang up if you know what's good for you do you hear me...

Amber: oh my gosh I'm so scared right now..go on..

Me: how could you do this to me? I thought we were friends..that you actually loved me...

Amber: friends? Kim it's either you are stupid or very slow...you can't say you are my friend while you started the betrayal..

Me: what are you talking about?

Amber: we have forgotten now ain't we? Kim you knew I liked Tony first.. remember the first time we both saw him I screamed showing my interest..I asked you to help me get him but instead you took him for yourself

Me: whaaaat? Are you serious? Such an old thing? Tony made it clear he wasn't interested and I thought it was a mere crush that you had for him

Amber: now you know it wasn't..you hurt me Kim..I loved the guy..he was everything I spoke of...even if he didn't want me you shouldn't have gone for him...girl code girl

Me:so you did all of this just to get back to me for a man who won't even get a hard on for you?

Amber : yes! You have no idea how long I've been waiting for this day..where I can actually tell you on your face how much I hate you for what you did..I so wanted to kill you hey but I realized that will be too easy..so I figured I should take him away from you so that you can know and understand the pain

Me: you are such a piece of trash..I wish I let Thali shoot you that day

Amber: unfortunately you didn't..look I've forgiven you.. you have paid you debt anyway..so whenever you ran out of money, place to crash don't hesitate to call me ok? Only with thay, because baby our videos are making us money!

I hung up and stood up pacing up and down..no this cannot be happening.. someone please tell me that I'm dreaming..that this is some kind of a nightmare

My phone rang. It was Thali I picked up..

Me: hello

Thali:brace yourself, Tony is coming to you now

Me: whaaaat?

Thali: Yes,I've seen him driving in with a speed

Me: ok thanks for the heads up

I hung up and went to stand by the window...

Moment later he walked in looking all hot. I felt so bad, I've cheated on my man with useless idiots..a future for what...

He looked rather calm than what I imagined him to be..but then Tony isn't a violent man...

Tony: Kim.. are you alright?

I kept quiet. I didn't know how to respond to that..

Tony: listen I have come to talk to about this thing of dumping our daughter to your mother and not spending time with her...

What is wrong with you?

I kept quiet trying to digest everything..he didn't know yet. He hasn't seen the videos..but maybe I should tell him myself?

Me: baby I'm sorry I know I haven't been the best partner these days but I will try my best to Change...we will talk about this later at home...

Tony:ok later it is then

He picked his keys and cellphone then walked out..I sighed in relief and called thali

Thali:I'm on my way to class what's up?

Me:he doesn't know...yet...

Thali:thank God I was so scared for you hey...ok let me see what I can do to help then I will call you..
keep your phone with you...

Me:ok thali thanks sis.. after all this, you are the only true friend on my corner...

Thali: I'm not so perfect too Kim, I have my own flaws.. but I would never go this way to hurt you

Me: I know and thanks for everything

I hung up with tears rolling on my face .I wiped them and called Marcus..he picked up on second ring...he was fuming that Amber used him to settle her revenge and what not

I just told him to give me the stuff..I seriously needed to be high and just forget the rest....

-----THALI -----

After speaking to Kim I knew that I needed to do something..there's still a chance especially with Tony not knowing I called Thando I'm taking a chance here but really I don't have a choice...

Thando: baby..I was about to call you..I just got home...

Me: that's great , Thando can I please see you..it's very urgent please

Thando: okay love I don't think that's possible..like I said I just got home...

Me: please give me your address I will come to you

Thando: sounds really serious ok I will text you my address

I hung and minutes later her location pin was on my phone..I drove to this place on a huge speed I was praying not to get a traffic fine...

I got to this huge house.. more like a presidential home.. the security was tight like shit.. breaking in here will be a mission.. I finally got in after millions of questions to verify my story

They took me to the lounge and I met this yummy white man..he looked a bit matured not old.. because he was yummy

He looked up at me holding his tablet..he was wearing white from top to bottom which made him even hotter

John:hi,I'm John the house owner how may I help you ?

Oh my gosh .so he owns this place? Wow!..I cleared my throat...

Me:I'm Thali sir I'm looking for Thando.

John:oh my daughter.. alright.. make yourself comfortable I will go call her

Me:thank you

He stood up and disappeared to this huge house..I remained behind admiring the house...gosh ive only seen such beauty on reality shows like boma top billing or so..

Thando came down looking more beautiful in person..we hugged..

Me: you look even more hot in person .

Thando:please stop it..ngathi ngikhathele so..

So Thali what is it that couldn't wait for the time we agreed on?

I narrated to her what happened with Kim and Amber

Me': I mean you are an IT guru neh..so you can be able to take it down...

Thando: I can..but you will have to get rid of the original..I can also block the user into not posting more of this

Me: please let's get to it. .her man can't see this

Thando: u love this Kim woman neh?

Me: a lot .she really showed me kindness when nobody did..her and Tony

Thando: ok come with me to my dad's study then we will start the process..we need to also hack into this Amber woman's internet details..

Me:ok I could help with that

Thando: follow me then

We went to the study that was so comfy..the furniture in here screamed money...

Thando sat on the big chair behind the desk and started doing her magic..she asked few questions about Amber I told her what I knew..after like an hour her man came to check up on us..holy Jesus. .. Isaac Kings..more hotter than his supposed twin Roman reigns .

After two hours Thando told me that it's down .even the ones that downloaded it won't be able to play it on their phones..

Me: Thando I so owe you so much my sister thank you

Thando: you do..since there's a lot on your plate today..let's postpone

Me: yes..I will call you.

Thando: sure we can do lunch here in the house if you don't mind

Is she kidding me? This gorgeous house?of course I don't mind..

We hugged and I walked out all excited..I tried calling Kim to tell her the good news but Tony picked up the phone...

Me: Tony

Tony: Kimberly is in hospital..she was found bleeding on her desk,drugs on her hands...the doctors are still making tests

I felt a huge lump on my throat..this got Amber written all over it..this witch..she's trying to get rid of her for good

Tony: hello? Thali are you there?

Me:yes..is she going to be ok?

Tony:(sigh) I hope so..I just don't understand why would Kim want to overdose..I may have shouted at her earlier but that's not a reason to run to drugs

Me: Tony ,Kim is going through the most right now..she will need you when she wake up..please be there for her

Tony: do you know something that I should know?

Me : Kim will tell you when she's ready..I've got to go.. keep me posted I will pass by later

Tony:ok

I hung up and drove straight to the house..

I parked the car outside and got into the house rushing to my room..I locked the door behind me and got to my bed I took the gun from the ceiling and put it on my bag

I then drove out getting on my car then drove to this sluttish club she owns...

The bouncers refused to let me in..I told them to tell their boss who am I

Few minutes later they escorted me inside her office..she was sitting on this high chairs with Marcus drinking Scotch

Amber: ah..if it's not the little sister in person then...

Marcus : it's her..Amber this one is hot .she can make us lot of money hey

Oh .so they are in this together huh? The club was so noisy with the music and all..I felt this anger fueling in me when they spoke about how much money I would make them while laughing

Me': Amber I warned you to stay clear of Kim didn't I? Now you went to an extent of trying to kill her? Well im sorry to ruin your little celebration but she's not dead

I saw her ugly smile disappear on her face

Amber: she's not dead?

Me: no..she's a fighter..she will fight this and came out stronger than before.. in case you haven't noticed..I've taken down the video..I hope the couple of thousands you made are enough to cover your funeral

Amber: you are bluffing..you just a 19 year old kid .how can you take down a video? That need serious IT skills not some painting...

Me:(smiling?) Why don't you log in and see if I'm lying or not

She looked at me with an very ugly eye and took her laptop trying to log in with Marcus doing the same thing..

Marcus: erh boss..she's serious..the video has been taken down...

Amber:(typing roughly on her laptop) whaaaat? I'm unable to log in..

I moved around behind her on her chair..took the scotch and poured some to my glass..then drank and looked at Marcus who looked a bit scared

Me:you see the thing is I know people hey..I mean very important people that will sort out any mess..

Amber: Marcus squash this Cockcroahch

Marcus attempted to move but he was slowly..I grabbed the silencer and shot him three times on his chest exactly where his heart is...he bounced on the Chair taking his last breath with Amber freezing

I turned into her..

Me: any goodbye words?

Amber: please..I have a child..

Me:I warned you Amber I really did

I didn't wait for her to speak again I fired the bullets on her making sure I'm emptying the gun on her

She fell from the chair hitting the ground while she died...

Reality checked in..fuck..I've just killed two people same time..I panicked..I took my phone and called Thando

It's rang unanswered for three times..I tried again this time a male voice answered

John : Thando's phone hello

Me: (shaking and breaking) hi can I get Thando

John: I'm sorry my dear they just left with the husband I think she forget her phone because it's been ringing here on my study

Me: oh ok it's Thali I was there earlier...

John:oh oh I remember..what's wrong..why you crying?

I might as well tell him...

Me: I messed up ...I've just killed two people...

John: whaaaat? How?

I gave him the short version...I could hear movements from his side..

John: lock the door don't move im coming..

Me: okay thanks

I don't know why I trusted him but I felt like I should...I did as he told me..I then called Seth..he's a lawyer in case I go to prison he should be ready to bail me out

Seth: kiddo

Me: I'm in a mess

Seth: what did you do?

Me: remember the silencer you gave me?

Seth: yeah?

Me: just put it to use..I need you to be ready in case I get arrested

Seth: shiit? How bad?

Me: two people

Seth: Jesus Christ..I'm on my way to that side..Tony called and asked me to hold things in the club because his woman is in hospital..I will see you

Me: okay thanks

I hung up and took up the scotch now I was drinking from the bottle every minute feeling like an hour..I was actually panicking that what's if the bouncers decide to come check in their boss?

Then My phone rang..it was Thando..I picked up

Me:hello

John: open the door

I run to the door and he quickly got in with two men I just hugged him tight..I was shaking

John: damn..you did a mess here girl..gentlemen clean up please and take care of the CCTV footage

Don't worry it's shall be ok..let's go

I took my bag and He opened another door I didn't see and it's led to the back side and we got in his car..he drove away...

I was on the back seat hugging myself

Me: my car?

John: don't worry it will be toured back to you give me your keys

I handed them to him the keys

Me: thank you..for doing this while you don't know me .

John: you are my daughter's friend so I have to help you and besides your freakyness is a turn on

Me:thanks I guess..please don't tell Thando about this

John: my lips are sealed

Me:(brushing my face) gosh I've killed two people..I'm a murderer

John: hey don't be so hard on yourself..I'm sure you did what you had to

Me:I guess

I gave him direction he dropped me to the house . we then exchanged numbers he promised that my car will be back soon

I got to the house and got rid of the clothes I wore ..I took the longest shower ever..I was wearing warm clothes but I felt so cold

My car was brought in an hour later .I texted John thanks then called Tony to find out how is Kim he told me it's promising..she will be ok...

Thank God for that

I then went downstairs to get a drink...the door opened and I jumped..it's was Seth..he just hugged me so hard

Me: I'm so scared the cops are going to come after me

Seth:they won't..I went by the club..there's no evidence that you were there..even the guards didn't see anyone getting to the office..even the cameras

Wow...just like that...

To be continued on the next insert...

Drop a comment and let me know what you think



[1/23, 07:24] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 31

-----THALITHA-----

It's been 5days now since this whole incident happened..Seth is spending more time in the house and I haven't really talked nor saw Tony the past 5 days

I've been on the room painting day in and out, trying my best to take my mind out of the situation that took place

Apparently John made it look like Amber and Marcus ran away since they illegally took porn videos of Kim..

I haven't gone to see her yet but I've been calling to check on her..I've heard that she will be out of the hospital soon and that makes me happy...

I really don't know what is going to happen when she comes back to the house you know.. I love Kim and I will not let a silly mistake make me forget how kind and generous she was to me when they found me on the streets.. however it's sad because it's look like we are loving the Same man..yep..you heard me right.

I'm falling for Tony and it's hurts so badly..I know it's wrong in so many levels but I just help it..

I was doing the final touches on the painting that I was doing when I felt him all over this room... he's home..his scent just made me weak.. he was behind me..I was wearing a long,big baggy shirt with only an underwear..I was on bare foot..my shirt pulled to my sleeves,my hair tied up on a messy bun you can tell I looked like a snack right now

I felt him taking steps closer to me..every time he did that move I was doing breath in and out

He got closer to me and put his hands on my waist..I wanted to yank them off but I stood there like I've been struck by the lightning

He gently and softly placed a kiss on my neck before he turned me around for a full kiss on the mouth.. gosh this was wrong in so many levels but it's felt just right..we kissed deep showing the hunger and desire we had for each other the past three days.

I dropped my brushes to the floor and he picked me up to his waist..for now I switched off everything else and focused on what was happening right now

He spoke through my mouth while he was fondling with my breasts

Tony: missed me baby?

Me:a lot

Tony:show me

He put me down and I got to look at him..damn man you are so fine...even though his eyes show that he hasn't been sleeping well but he's sexy as fuck

I pushed him to the single couch that was in the room and pulled down his pants.. I took his dick out and on my knees I gave him the mind blowing blow job..his moans was driving me crazy while he grabbed my hair roughly directed me how deep I should go..

I couldn't take it anymore I got up and didn't undress,just took off my undies and sat on top of him..it was a bit painful because I haven't had sex in a week and he was big so I took it slowly up until I was comfortable,I began to grind on him a bit rough..he stopped me .and cupped my boobs under my shirt...

Tony: make love to me baby..nice and slowly..that's how I want it. .

Grin passed my face and I obeyed..the connection we felt on every grind and moved I made on top of him maintaining the eye contact was out of this world

We finally both came and I rested on his shoulder feeling his dick going soft inside me..that was mind blowing...

Me: how are you?

Tony: now I'm better..how have you been?

Me: I've been better

Tony:we need to talk

Ok now that sounded very serious..I got up from him and get one of towels I keep here to wipe the pant off and wiped ourselves..we got dressed and went to stand by the window

Tony: thats a beautiful painting you have done right here .you should open up a gallery soon.. you are talented

Me: thank you.. but I still need the skills

Tony: back to what I was saying...Thali..Seth told me what happened..what you did for Kim .. there's a gap I'm finding hard to connect ..

What is it that Amber did for you to take her out of the way?

I felt my heart beating hard ..kanti lo Kim didn't tell Tony the truth yet?

Me: I want to answer you honestly and fully but I believe that you should speak to Kim..she's going to shade some light on that

Tony: she's been up for three days and I didn't want to pressure her to talk because she was still weak... but right now I really need answers

I looked down not knowing what to say..I just bite my nails..it's what I do every time I'm nervous

Tony:she's coming home tonight..the three of us will sit down and you will tell me what is going on

I'm off to the club..see you later

He kissed me on my cheek and left suddenly I felt so weak.

I decided to put away the things I use and go to my room to take a shower..

I checked the time it was already 5pm..I decided to go downstairs and gave the lady who cooks a break and prepared something

I wanted to cook a mouth watering meal since she's been fed up to the hospital food so I prepared dumplings, and beef stew..the weather was cosy since it has started raining so the food was going to go well with the weather

Around half past six I heard a car pulling over and the family walked in.. Seth,Kim and Tony

I hugged Kim..poor her..she looked so miserable...

-----TONY-----

I hate hospitals I really do being here the whole week has been draining, since Kim has been up we haven't really talked.. she wake up..eat,then drink her medication and sleep and all I do is to sit around working on my laptop

I'm not going to lie..I miss Thalitha so badly..her portable body against mine .her warm pussy...her scent

I miss sleeping next to her.. feeling her long legs on mine..her snuggling on my chest .damn thinking about her just get me a hard on..I haven't had that kind of arousal..even when I helped Kim to bath ever since she's been up

I've been with her both of us naked and she tried to make the move but I stop her..I don't want her like that ..my interest is for her to get better..get up and tell me since when is she a junkie

Today's the fifth day the doctor is discharging her..I couldn't be happier..means I will go home and meet my favorite woman...

I told Kim I need to go home,change and head to the club since there will be a performing I need to know how's Seth holding up

Speaking of Seth, he told me Thali killed Amber and some guy I was suspecting that Kim is cheating on me with

It's doesn't make sense..Thali and killing? I get that she hates Amber's gut but to go that far? What is it that she done? I need to get to the bottom of this

I got home and took a long deserving shower..I looked around for Thali and didn't see her..but her car was around which means she's up painting

I walked there and the sight was very very appealing..

Wearing nothing but a long big shirt.. exposing her fresh thighs and long legs...I'm obsessed with her legs..she should be a model or something

I couldn't help myself but I wanted to be inside this woman this moment..

Luckily the feeling was mutual..we made sweet love and I felt in love with her deeper .I was so Tempted to tell her that I love her but I can't..not now while everything is all over the place like this

I need to tie up loose ends and start on a clean slate with her..she's been through a lot and I know better that I need to treat her better

I showered after our little session and went to check up Seth...I was happy to be back on my normal world

We knocked off and he drove me to fetch Kim, we haven't said much to each other..but today we will talk..

We got home and we were welcomed by the smell of beef stew and I felt hungry instantly

Thali saw Kim and ran to hug her..I felt a little bit pain thinking that my decision next will destroy this friendship and bond..but hey I have to do what I have to do..I deserve to be happy too..

Seth: something smells amazing here..kid what have you prepared?

Thali: call me kid one more time I swear you won't get anything..

Seth: my bad...sorry my lady what is it that you prepared?

Thali:(smiling)much better...I made beef stew and dumplings

Seth: damn please hurry and dish up..I need to go back to the club

I just laughed looking at Seth ordering Thali in my house whereas he could go home to his wife and asked to be cooked for..ai

Kim went to sit down in the lounge and I went to join her but I sat on another couch..

Kim:come sit next to me baby

Me: it's ok..I'm cool where I am

I took my phone and started getting busy with it...

Seth and Thali were busy making jokes and laughing at the kitchen...Thali came with the tray of food while Seth was already eating his

We washed our hands and digged in

Thali: so Kim how are you feeling now?

Kim: I'm much better sis thanks for asking..I just missed you, missed this house..my bae and daughter.. everything actually

I just looked at Thali who was smiling..I wonder how she does it...I wouldn't be so chilled and comfortable if another man were to say the same thing about her to me..or maybe she doesn't love me ? Nah she does..the way she made love to me..I felt it

Seth:fam I'm off to the club see y'all later, my lady..your food was delicious thank you

He said after wiping his plate clean..Thali just smile nodding as he took his keys and disappeared

Now that the three of us were all alone, awkward silence filled us...

I waited till everyone was done eating...thali took the dishes to the kitchen and washed them

She came back with three cups of hot chocolate...

Me:ladies it's been a long day and I seriously need to rest so I'm going to go straight to the point

I feel like there are things I don't know here..things I'm not aware of...so I will start with you Kim.. I need to tell me everything...as to why you ended up in hospital...

They looked at each other and Thali gave her the look that talk..Kim looked down for a full 5 minutes..oh well we can do this the whole night but today she will speak

Kim: Tony what I'm gonna tell you will shock you..I just want to apologise for my stupidity and not listening to you Thali when you warned me .I guess I was just too naive to see the whole thing even though the signs were there....

She then narrated how this happened ..the first day she slept with that guy .to the 4somes in Pretoria to a video I didn't get to see...

I know I've been screwing Thali but this ..it's something else ...but either way I can't be acting all holy holy because I too cheated..and now we were even...but the point is she started it first

Thali:(playing with her fingers) that's when I got my friend from cape Town to help me take down the videos...I was just too angry and sad that I acted on emotions..I took my gun and went to the club where Marcus and Amber were celebrating Kim's downfall..I just lost it and shot them and killed them

Kim moved a bit from her couch shocked..

Kim: Thali, you mean you did that all for me?

Thali:yes and I would do it again..in a heartbeat with no doubt..

Kim:oh my sister.. come here

They hugged with tears rolling down their faces.. I just looked down feeling guilty..

Kim: what happened to their bodies...

Thali: don't worry about that..it has been taken care of...

I remember meeting her the first time in my club..I knew that she was wild and strong but now I'm even more charmed.. she's goals... I guess living on the streets toughened her up

Me: Thali please give us a moment

She didn't even wait a second later..she got up and left so quickly..it was me and Kim

I looked at her knowing what I'm going to say now will break her even more..

Me: Kim...I've heard everything and honestly I don't know what to say but however I'm not going to stand there and lie to you or your face .I'm disappointed in you Kim..how can you be allowed to be led on by a friend to this...if at 26 you still get influenced how are you going to be a good mother to our daughter?

Kim: Tony I know I've messed up but seriously you cannot question my mother roles to my daughter

Me: oh I will and I just have! Kim I don't want to go deep and I don't want to do more harm than that's already done..what I'm trying to say is that I forgive you

Kim: just like that?

Me:yes..I haven't been perfect either

Kim: what do you mean by that?

Me:well I've been seeing someone too...

Kim:(standing up) who?

Me: it's really doesn't matter what matters now is that both of us has wrong each other. .and I would also like to apologise for that...

Kim:(fuming) Tony I don't give a damn about your apologies right now! I need to know the whore you were busy with... I need to know her!!

Me: oh sweetheart you don't get to call her a whore .you don't get to call her that..she's way more than that .way more than you can ever be

Kim: whaaaat? Seriously Tony? How long has this been going on?

Me: it hasn't been long..I can honestly say it's started after you were unavailable..

Kim: unavailable? What do you mean?

Me:Kim I mean it's started when you neglected me and my daughter for a 4 some party at Pretoria..she was there.. available..

Every night you were not here she was always by my side..and you the difference between you two is that she make me feel completely like a man..the respect and love she gives through her actions is all that counts ...I'm sorry to say this but I've developed real feelings for her..

Kim:(closing her eyes and opening them again) who's this woman Tony? You have brought whores next to my daughter?

She then started pacing up and down..I remained on my seat..I really don't understand her anger now..I mean she started the whole mess

Me: I never really bring any hoes to our daughter...

Thali made a pass to the kitchen I don't know what she was getting but when she was going back Kim looked at her and her face changed...

Kim: hey you..stop there...it's you isn't?..

Thali looked at her then me and walked away...Kim was right behind her and I got up from my seat when I heard Thali screaming

Kim dragged her by her hair and she tripped and fell from the stairs..Kim was now screaming

Kim: I can't believe this..I picked you from the streets and you sleep with my man? You act as if you care and love me whereas you and Amber are just one and the same... bloody hypocrites

Me: what's wrong with you? Stop this madness now before I kick you out

I helped Thali stand up..she was bleeding from her mouth

Kim:(passing up and down) oh my gosh he's even defending her..on my presence! Amber may have wronged me but she was right with something..you sleeping with my man..! How could you?

Thali tried to talk but Kim pushed her roughly..I don't know where she get the strength from but Thali hit a vase that was in the corner with her head and fell on the table

Immediately there was lot of blood..I panicked and moved to her..I felt her pulse..

Kim:oh my God is she dead?

Me: shut up! Just shut the fuck up!

Kim I'm driving Thali to the hospital and pray she's ok..or else I will have you arrested myself...

When I come back..I don't want to find you here.. go back to your mother's place or call one of your fuck buddies

I carried Thali to the car and drove out to the hospital in a speed

I got there and I saw my nephew Brian on duty . thank God some one I know

They attended her while I was praying for her recovery and safety...Kim sent me messages apologising I just switched off my phone..

I don't know when I fell asleep but I was woken up by Brian shaking me up

I opened my eyes it was morning already.. the morning stuff coming in..I checked the time it was 7am..shit .I haven't been getting enough sleep for quite long no wonder

Me:man how is she?

Brian: okay.. she sustain few head and arm injuries but we managed to stop the bleedings and gave her something for the headache

Me:oh thank God ...is she up?I need to see her

Brian:you can see her but there's something you need to know that I found on her tests...

I panicked a bit..God I hope she didn't occur a head concussion or something...

Me:go on...

Brian: she's pregnant..

Me: whaaaat!

Brian:yes... She told me it was yours.. congratulations uncle.. you may go see her.. don't wake her up

I was stunned..I had mixed emotions about this but I was happy that she was carrying my baby..I know circumstances and timing is bad but fuck I will celebrate this...

I sat next to her bed...I held her hand and kissed her forehead before I touched her stomach...

Me: Thali I know we didn't start up on a good way for a relationship but marn I'm so happy..did you hear what the doctor said? Baby we are going to have a baby.. You have no idea how happy I am..I swear to God I will protect you and my baby with everything I have...

You; Saint and our unborn baby are my reasons to be alive and work hard...I love you guys so so much...

Kim:did I hear that right? She's pregnant and it's your child?

Shit I turned and Kim was at the door looking like she's ready to finish off what she started...

Me:Kim...

To be continued...drop a comment and let me know what you think of today's episode..



[1/23, 15:19] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 32

-----SOMEWHERE IN EASTERN CAPE -----

----Nomgqibelo Groetbroom----

I had just finished up doing laundry for the family..my husband was home this weekend since he got a permanent job in Mpumalanga he's frequenting there ...

I was actually happy when they moved him from Joburg..that means he won't be able to hunt my daughter down again

Yes I'm the bad mother I know..and there's no single day that passes where by I don't regret everything I did to my daughter

The thing is her father used to be very abusive even during my pregnancy that at one point I wished I killed her

But the moment I gave birth to her I fell in love with her deeply..I loved her with everything..when her father left us we became best friends..I actually didn't care about his presence at all..yes he was very financial stable but I wasn't going to run after him to support his daughter

He knew he has a daughter so it was really up to him to make the effort.

When Thali was 9 I met a very wonderful man so I thought he was...u Tata u Majola..we fell in love..he treated me with so much love and kindness

He spoiled me with so much love and loyalty..the love we only get to see on the movies..

I was finally happy...he took care of everything in the house..loved my daughter I loved his son as mine and everything was perfect

After two years of being together he asked me to marry him..I couldn't be happier..we got married and we bought a house and came with our children to live together

Everything was going well I never noticed anything wrong up until Thalitha accused my husband of rape...it didn't make any sense..how can a man that love her this much rape her?

Ok I know my daughter she's been wild vele from the age of 14 but I couldn't tolerate her claims...I told her to stop this but she went on of which caused the drift between us

When she told me she was pregnant I lost it and I asked my husband who said Thalitha was seducing him..my daughter is very Beautiful and sexy,she's taking after me...

I guess the insecurities of my past came running to me I believe a man over my daughter..I forced her to do abortion...

She then came again saying her half brother is doing the same thing...at that time u Majola was losing patience with me..he gave me an ultimatum that it's either I continue believing the nonsense my daughter is feeding me or I put her on the lane...

I couldn't risk losing everything I've worked so hard for build over the years..so I guess you know what I did

But then I came to regret all of this when Mlamuli(his son) one day came home and forced his way to my legs with a gun over my head..I didn't believe that the man I raised as a son was raping me...

He raped me with no mercy in his eyes...so it's been happening for a while...when his father is gone to Mpumalanga he takes over..I've even got tired of fighting him because it's helpless..and his father will do the same thing..he will take his word against mine just like I did with my daughter

I hope wherever she is..she's safe and happy... I miss her...

-----THALITHA -----

I've been pretending to be sleeping the whole time Tony was talking..his words felt so good in my ears and heart while I've closed my eyes

When doctor Roberts told me I was a month pregnant i knew it's from all the freaky sex we have been having... I remember I took the injection for six months and it's expired two weeks before Tony and I started getting it on

I don't know how these birth control works really..I was thinking that still it's in my system the damage won't happen but I guess who was I fooling?

To be honest I'm so not ready to be a mother or being pregnant especially under these circumstances...but one thing I know is that I've had two abortions already so I'm keeping this baby

Hearing Tony said those words gave me hope..gave me faith that I can do this..I've been given a chance to motherhood again..this time with an amazing man..so why not try it out

My fake sleep pretence was disturbed by hearing Kim's voice in the room...

I'm actually scared of her.. yesterday she really wanted to kill me..the fury in her eyes yooh I've never seen her this angry

And now I was so scared that after hearing Tony said all those words to might fuel her into doing something more dangerous I opened my eyes.. Tony quickly turned to me...

Tony: baby..thank God you are awake.. you ok?

I shook my head pretending as if I just woke up

Me: please give me and Kim some private moment

I was taking a chance Hoping that she won't try anything funny since this is a private hospital

Tony hesitating he left and Kim remained at the door...

I sat up careful that I don't hurt myself on my arms..I could feel my head was a bit heavy from falling but I will live

Me: Kim I know that you probably think I'm the worst person right now and I don't blame you

I know that you betrayed Tony but what me and him did was way worse and totally unacceptable..you both trusted us and we did this

I will speak on my side..I feel so awful to allow emotions and moment of weakness to control me...I shouldn't have done that to you..it's doesn't matter what you did but I shouldn't have

I know saying sorry will sound so useless right now but I'm truly I am..if it was possible to go back and fix things I would...I'm sorry and another thing I want you to know is that I truly love you as my sister.. you have been so kind to me hence this breaks my heart so much...

Kim:(chuckling through tears) you love me? Please stop

You know what hurt me the most is that it's you Thali..the same person who went all out of the way to show me how awful Amber was while you also stabbed me on the back

Tears dropped on her eyes and I felt them too...I looked down..

Kim: I would have understand if Tony retailed on my cheating with some random girl..but no..it has to be you..Thali I trusted you so much . I was very comfortable around you..I even took you to my family and introduced you as my sister...

What hurt even more is that you didn't only fucked him..you also got pregnant for him

I couldn't talk no more..the lump over my throat was so huge..and I felt my mouth dry...tears rolling on me...

Kim: how many times have you fucked him? And did you do it on our bed?

Now those were very difficult questions to answer

Kim: (yelling?) I'm talking to you damn it? How many times?

Me:(frightened) a couple of times..Kim look I'm sorry..and no we never got to your bedroom

Kim:(holding her ears) you know I was hoping that you will say it's just happened one night maybe you were drunk over some wine and you fucked then you woke up to realize it's has been a mistake..but no..you fucked over and over again..this shows that you enjoyed it..both that you wanted some more

That was true but I couldn't say it to her face..

Me: Kim I'm sorry..I really wish there was a way I could end all of this..sort this out...

Kim: there is a way...get rid of that thing in your stomach and leave Tony and I to fix things

Me: whaaaat?

Kim: yes..or else the police will get to know about Amber and Marcus

Me:(total shocked) wow..I can't believe that you would stoop so low to think of revenge

Now let me make something clear to you Kim..yes I'm a bitch and you hate me for screwing your man and sure I deserve that but on a second thought I actually think you also deserve it..you had it coming

Fuck Kim I did everything in my power to help you on your way with Tony...now you have the guts to stand there threatening me?

Listen here..I'm keeping this baby and you can go do your worst..go tell the cops and let's see if you will even get to that police station alive nxx

I was actually fuming now..I don't know where did I get the liver to say all these things but Kim undiqhela kakubi ngoku and I will not let her think she can just threaten me..hell no

She looked at me with an evil eye taking her bag

Kim:you haven't heard the last from me..you will regret this I'm telling you..

She slammed the door on her way out..I did the breathing exercises because I could feel that I'm getting so annoyed..

Tony came in running and held my hand..he was so worried so I had to put up a brave face..

Tony: baby are you ok?

Me: I will be fine.. please get me cold water

He stood up running..the moment he was gone I released the tears I have been holding....

-----KIM -----

I can't believe Thali just spoke to me like that ..this girl has a liver..I see she thinks she's untouchable now..well we shall see about that little missy

I need to make sure I play my cards right because indeed she's connected..I mean if she can get people to take down a porn video on the website and making two Bodies disappeared then she's stronger than she appears to be

But yesterday I had all time to myself to actually research about her and her family background

I walked out of the reception and got to the car and took my phone calling someone

Voice: hello?

Me: hi..can I please speak to Mlamuli Majola?

Mlamuli: speaking how may I help you?

Me:(smiling) I've got some information that might interest you...

Mlamuli: listen young lady..I have no interest in whatever you are selling so stop calling me...

Me':it's about your sister Thalitha...

There was silence for a moment..I think he was trying to digest what I just said

Mlamuli: go on...

I smiled knowing that now I've got his attention all shall go well...

To be continued on the next insert

Please drop a comment and let me know what you think of this insert

[1/27, 12:07] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 32

-----TONY -----

I was sitting on the bed next to her brushing her hair ... after giving her water she rested on shoulder controlling her breathing patterns. I knew that what ever they spoke with Amber was the cause to this .. but I won't bomb her with questions.. she will tell me when she's calm down.....

Shit I can't explain the feeling I'm having right now..I'm going to be a father again..damn we made a baby. I so love this woman.. truly love her...I know our situation isn't ideal but I know that we'll be happy.

I just need to get to talk to Amber.. lately I feel like I don't know her.. she's a stranger...

I saw Seth getting in..we greeted each other whispering..I then gently lay her on the pillow and we went out..

Seth: Bros Brian told me the good news I came to congratulate you in person.

Me:one doesn't have a secret in this family but thank you

Seth: I still can't believe you two were screwing each other..but there was a time I suspected that you two have a thing although you didn't want to admit it at the time

Me:when was that?

Seth: hahaha the first time when you dragged her to your house after she turned up with that blesser in your club

Me:(laughing)man she's always been a handful this one..you won't believe that she had came earlier on shot on her thigh and she treated herself with my expensive whiskey

Seth:(laughing) whaaaat! She's go gangster..marry her asap

Me: I'm definitely putting a ring on it..but once everything is settled an and cooled down..I love her man.. I've never been this happy

Seth: I feel you. It's written all over your face.... how's Amber taking this?

Me:we haven't really spoke well..she's the reason why Thali is her.. she fought with her yesterday...

Seth:the nerve! Bros you will forgive me but Kim is a bitch and I never liked her ..

Me:I know..none of you did but I loved her and I thank you for tolerating her for me .

Seth: you need to do something to ensure that she's protected and safe...

Me: what are you suggesting?

Seth:you know the ritual we all do for our women...

Me: forget it..I'm not going down that road..I'm a christian remember?

Seth:ok fine.. then put a tracker on her.. that way you will know when ever she's in danger .

Me: Thali will flip..she will think I did that to control her...

Seth:why would you tell her you have put it in the first place?

Me:(scratching my head)I don't know man but I guess you should

Seth: thank you .now go deal with Amber I will quickly do this while she's asleep

Me:thanks again..but be careful she's pregnant

Seth: don't worry I'm the pro

We shoulder bumped and I went to kiss her forehead and exited the hospital

I got on my car and drove to my house. The way it was so hot. Even this fan didn't do any justice

I got to the house and saw bags on the lounge..I put my phone on the table and went to look for her...

I saw her zipping the last luggage.

Me: Kim

She jumped up startled..

Kim:you scared me

Me: sorry.. can we talk?

Kim: I don't want to talk right now..I'm too hurt and mad I don't trust my mouth to say something good..

Me:ok then let me do the talking...

Listen I'm truly sorry things have gotten this way.. I know I can never be able to erase the betrayal and pain but I don't want us to be enemies..we have a daughter to raise.. and I will really like it if we remain cool and civil for our daughter's sake...

I will make sure that you are well taken care of you and our daughter.. I will never abandoned that responsibility.. and whenever you need anything I'm here..

Kim:(crying) are we really breaking up? I was hoping that we can still talk things through..

Me:I'm sorry it has come to this..

Kim:but why her Tony? She's a damaged good for you.. she's not your type..

Me:that's it I'm done with this..we are not going to do the name shaming ok?.. remember how you were before we started dating? Did I judge you for your past?

She looked down playing with her hands .

Me: exactly so let's not judge Thalitha...

We will talk about the arrangements of bringing Saints to visit.. and please you will respect Thalitha..I know we may have betrayed you after acting on emotions but she truly loved you. She committed crime just for you

I then walked past her to the shower...by the time I got out she was not around..I called Seth he told me to rest he is looking after her

I decided to do some work at the time being..

-----SETH -----

After I was done with inserting the tracking device on her I decided to call my brother Sean..

Sean:I'm very busy what is it?

I narrated the story about Thali being pregnant and all

Sean:I hear you and my feeling tells me that this Amber woman won't let this go . just like that...

Me:my thoughts exactly but Tony is taking everything lightly..

Sean: and we can't really harm her... she's his daughter's mother..

Me:yeah..but remember that file we once had about her?

Sean:yeah?

Me:I think we should keep it safe.. just in case she decides to misbehave

Sean: alright cool.. but tell me about the new madam

Me: Bros this one is the future Mrs Roberts... you know our guts never lie about this

Sean:yeah..but Seth don't do anything that will get you in trouble with Tony...

Me:I won't..all I did was to insert a tracker on her...

Sean:I hope with Tony's permission?

Me: of course

Sean:great then.. I will pop by maybe next week to see him

Me: sure.

I hung up and looked at the madam opening her eyes...

Thali:ouch..my wrist hurts.

Me: sorry take it easy

Thali: looks like I was cut .. what happened..

Me:oh nothing hectic the doctor put some drip on you

How are you doing?

I was trying to divert the attention away before she asks too many questions..

Thali: my head is still heavy but I will be fine. Where is Tony?

Me:home..sent him to bath and change

Thali:(smiling) and you volunteered to be my body guard I guess

Me:(laughing) yes...

Thali:well I'm glad you did..you won't believe what Kim said

Me: what did she say

Thali: she literally threatened me to terminate my baby or else she will rat me to the cops..

Me: whaaaat? She did what? Did you tell Tony about this?

Thali:no I didn't and please don't..I took care of it .

Me:(smiling) kid you are amazing you know that..Tony is fucken blessed

She grabbed the pillow and hit me with it hurting herself in the process I laughed

Seth: I'm sorry baby mama I won't call you kid anymore

Thali:just because you are my favorite Robert doesn't mean I won't shoot you ..you know?

Me:please abeg don't talk about shooting I mean we both know you are mean when it's comes to that..

Thali:(smiling) good .. now please get me something delicious to eat I'm so hungry

Me: cravings already

She gave me a stare I stood up leaving the room

Me: coming right up mam...

-----THALITHA-----

Seth talks a lot but I like him..he's really cool..out of all them brothers he's the chilled one..oh and my doctor..he sound sweets..I wonder how many are they..I've only met the two brothers excluding Tony and Seth of course and all of them got the no nonsense look

Seth is my buddy he even bought me a car on my birthday..the car I'm driving..now he was dropping jokes after jokes I completely forgot I was in the hospital..

Tony walked in while we were still laughing..he looked fresh and hot..I suddenly felt horny..they bro hugged

Tony: looks like I was not missed here...

Seth: jealousy makes you nasty.

Tony: thanks for standing in for me brother..

Seth: no problem..kid I will see you around

Me: voestek Seth

He laughed going out leaving me and Tony alone..he had this huge smirk on his face .he kissed me on the mouth

Tony: how are you feeling now baby .

Me: horny.....

His smirk changed to this huge grin on his face

Tony: well I will take care of that later.. you are coming home tonight

Me: yay that's prefect..I was tired of this bed as well..

Tony: I can imagine..I still can't believe we are going to be parents

He took my hands to his. I smiled thinking of me being a mother

Me: I still can't believe too hey..and I'm so scared

Tony: don't be.. you have me and my brother's are happy meaning we'll have their support and the wives

Me: it's overwhelming hey...how's Kim?

Tony:(sigh) not fine but we spoke..she left today

Me: okay..I hope one day she will forgive us...

Tony: I hope so too

Then my phone rang and Tony passed it for me..it was Thando..I smiled answering phone

Me:hey love

Thando: don't love me..you went MIA on me what's up?

Me:yoooh honey a lot has been going on I'm so sorry

Thando: it's ok..I was hoping we could meet before I go back to Cape Town.. remember you owe me a lunch

Me: oh yeah I remember..at your house still?

Thando: preferably here yes..

Me: okay let's do tomorrow then

Thando: I will be waiting for you

She hung up and Tony was looking at me...

Me: well that's was Thando.. John's daughter

Tony:oh I think I know her ... through John's pictures though

Me: you know John

Tony: yes..my brother's are working with him on other business

Me: small world...so did you miss me?

Tony:(smiling) a lot.

Me: show me..

He didn't wait to be asked for the second time..he attacked my lips until we heard someone clearing their throat

Brian:mhmm get a room please

I hid on Tony's chest giggling

Brian: well Thali these are your discharge forms.. I will still need to see you though from time to time just to check you alright...

How are the headaches now?

Me: not too bad...

Brian: the swelling has gone down but I will advise you take it one day at a time..and uncle go easy on her..she's still my patient

Tony: and you are still my nephew so I'm going to beat you hard if you are going to be disrespectful

We laughed with Brian who checked up on me..

-----KIM-----

I got home and my daughter was way happy to see me..she ran to me and hugged me..I cried silently and let her go

I went to my room and locked myself in there.. everything came back like it was a movie..my heart was throbbing..it didn't want to accept the fact that Thali and Tony are together now

My door opened and my mom walked in..

Rachel: Kim..

Me: mom

Rachel: how are you?

Me: it's hurt mother

Rachel hugged me so tight brushing my back

Rachel: Tony called me and told me everything..I'm so sorry baby..I get where he's coming from

Me: but mom what about me?

Rachel: what are about you Kimberly?

Me: mom he also cheated on me with Thalitha...

Rachel: I'm actually disappointed in her for doing that but somehow I'm happy it's her taking over..I'm sure she will treat him better and they will be happy

Me: mom do you hear yourself right now ?

Rachel:Kim..you did this.. you brought it upon yourself...

Me: wow I can't believe that you choosing her over me.. really now...

I grabbed my phone walking out...

Rachel: where are you going we still talking?

Me:far away from your betraying side

I walked out of the house to the pool and dialed Mlamuli's number..he hasn't gotten back to me after the offer I made him yesterday

Mlamuli: yes...

Me: hi.. urh how are you?

Mlamuli: cut the small talk..what do you want?

Me: I've been waiting for your call about yesterday...

Mlamuli: oh that..Im sorry I'm not interested..

Me:(felt a huge lump on my throat) why?

Mlamuli:I've wronged that child..and I've been trying to find her to apologise and find a way of fixing our relationship and be a brother to her..I can't do what you want me to do.. actually your call has put some perspective in me..It has made me to change to be a better person..

Me:mxm coward

I hung up and threw my self in water with frustration...water always calm me when I'm mad

-----Mlamuli Majola -----

Y'all know about me now and I'm sure y'all convinced I'm the bad person but I'm not really that bad..

I just grow up in messed up environment and my father messed up me some more so yeah... I will tell you about my past some day

When that bitch called with information about my sister I was happy..I had to listen to her full conversation and I knew I couldn't do what she asked me to do

She wanted me to kidnap her..rape and kill her baby.. honestly I can't ..I've done that to her before doing it again will kill me..no matter the money she was offering I just couldn't

I see this as an opportunity to start over.. apologise to her and ask for her forgiveness

Well I haven't touched her mother since the call .and I will stop... reason Im sleeping with my stepmom is because she annoys me to the core because she chose indoda over her daughter..with guilty overpowering me I took it all out on her.. making her to feel what her daughter felt

I'm just praying the bitch doesn't call my dad because shit..that one wouldn't hesitate to take the offer..my father is so evil..

I felt my heart beating so fast and grabbed my phone dialing the number Kim gave me saying it's Thali's

It's rang answered for a couple of times..I decided to leave a message...

" Hi I'm sorry I've been trying to call you about something very urgent.. please get back to me"

I hung up and quickly packed my bags..I need to get Thali first before Kim and dad does..if I can make her aware then she can protect herself

I dialed Kim's number...she picked up on second ring

Kim: hello

Me: it's me .I've changed my mind .I'm coming to joburg

Kim: (happy) I knew you will come around..I will be waiting for you

Me:cool will halla at you then when I land..book me a nice hotel

Kim: I'm.on it and I will send you details

My plan is to go straight to Thali and explain the situation..in the meantime I will be stalling Kim so that she doesn't call my dad

I wonder if Thali will forgive me? Well it's the risk I'm willing to take..I don't care what she does to me..as long as I ask for her forgiveness and I get to tell her what this woman is up to .my guilty conscience will be clear ..and I can help if she want me to...

To be continued... please let me know what you think of this insert

Apologies for not posting,I had a terrible flue but I'm better now

[1/29, 16:06] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 34

-----THALITHA ----

I must say being back to the house is good, although it's no longer the same,it's weird and crazy but Kim's place is kind visible

We still yet to address the changes of our relationship with Tony but we slept on my bedroom last night catching up on the sex.

Today I'm going to be at Thando's place, for the lunch I promised her..I don't have friends so I might as well start creating some..she's not that older than me..22 and I'm 19

I sometimes envy her life..she looks like she has it all,a rich dad, yummy husband and very adorable daughter.

I was applying my lipstick, doing the final touches on my make up,I must say this glow and gorgeousness is from this pregnancy..I'm super hot marn

Due to the high rate of heat outside,I chose a short floral dress with sandals..I tied my hair up to a neat bun because wow it's so hot and I'm so not in a mood for any weaves

Tony walked in wearing shorts,pecks of being your own boss,uyazilovela nje..

Tony: looking this hot I'm so jealous..

He said hugging me from behind I just smiled looking at him through the mirror

Me: you don't have to..I will be back before you know it

Tony: I'm kidding my love you need a break from everything that's been happening plus I need to catch up on some work

Me: in that case let me go then

He kissed me carefully not to ruin my lipstick..I wiped it from his mouth with my thumb and grabbed my bag and left the house

I got in the car and opened the air conditioner turning on the radio,Metro FM

I took my phone because I wanted to search Thando's address again to punch on the GPS when I saw this missed call from the unknown number

I read the message and couldn't make the sense of it..called the number and it's ran unanswered..oh well..I punched the address and drove out

The drive to Thando was peaceful with Tender love by Sha Sha playing..I arrived and the heavy security searching began

When they were done I was allowed to pass..I parked in the visitor's parking and walked to the house

The guard on the door led me in I saw Thando on leggings and a shirt

We hugged and she led me to the pool side..great idea because wow it's so hot,drinks followed us,thank God she opted for orange juice

Thando: you look so hot madam what are you using for your skin?

Me: please stop with the flattery,have you checked yourself? Girl you are flames

Thando: hahaha thanks boo I guess having white genes and sleeping with one counts hey

She said that sticking her tongue out laughing,I laughed too

Me:I guess

Thando:but seriously though..girl you really are beautiful

You know that feeling when another female compliment you genuinely? Like it's the best bro..right now I was smiling like a retard

Me: thanks..must be the bun on the oven

I said touching my flat stomach,I still can't believe that there's something or better yet someone growing inside me

Thando: oh my word you are pregnant? Gosh now its explains it.. nevertheless you are beautiful nje by nature

Congratulations by the way., I'm sure you are excited

Me: I am..but not like the father

Thando: that is even perfect,I mean having the father walking down that road with you is amazing I tell you..

Me:yeah well I think so,to be honest I'm nervous hey,I mean I imagined myself as mother when I was 30 at least

Thando: (smiling) well I fell pregnant at 18 right after my final exam on my first time having sex so yeah I understand (she winked)

Me: no ways! What are you telling me?

Thando: honey I've been through hell hey. To cut the story short I was betrothed to this cute I mean yummy Prince..turned out he was gay..he came to tell me and we fought one thing led to another he broke my Virginity impregnating me same time..yooh it was crazy..I love my daughter by the way..she's the world to me

Me:ai and I thought I had it hard..what a story!so you and Isaac how did you meet?

Thando: long story for another day..but he was working for my dad..then he came to my apartment one day with my brother to guard me and you know with his yummy presence u girl couldn't breathe

We both laughed out at that..our snacks arrived and we ate..

Thando: so tell me about yourself and your family

Me: there's really nothing interesting to tell about me hey

Thando: ai don't lie, I mean you are beautiful 19 year old girl driving an Audi A3, with an iPhone 11 on her hand.. pregnant.. so please..

Me: (laughing) ok what can I say? Yes I'm what you described me but beyond that, I'm just a girl who's deeply scarred hey

I blinked to stop the tears that I felt they were coming

Thando: you don't have to say anything if you don't want to .

Me: (I shook my head after tears forced their way out) no I want to. i mean i haven't spoken to anyone much about this and it's heavy...

So I was raped by my stepdad and half brother.. as if that was not enough, my mother took their side. She chose them over me.. cut me off, got me off from school..

While on that I was raped by two guys after I took a wrong road when I was homeless

Then Tony and Kim found me and rescued me

Thando had her hand on her mouth the whole time crying too.. she hugged me brushing my back

Thando: yoooh I'm so sorry sweetheart.. yet you are here standing. you know what? You are strong baby , a true definition of imbokodo

We cried together as she comforted me

Thando: I'm glad that at least there are still good people out there.. I mean what Kim and her man did for you is very rare.. now I understand you went your way out to help her on that video

But there's something disturbing me here..if she's really that kind..why was she doing all these things?
How did Tony take it?

I looked down biting my nails..

Me: there's something I need to tell you and I don't know how you are going to take it

Thando: try me..give me your best shot

I laughed the she said that line,I then told her everything from how Amber lured Kim to this and how me and Tony find ourselves screwing each other yeah the details

Thando: wow! So Tony is your baby daddy?

You know what babe this is so messed up but I'm not going to be judgemental about it..yes I believe that maybe you could have handled the situation a bit better but none of us here could stop destiny..from the way I see it .you and this Tony guy were destined for each other..so even if it didn't happen back then,you two would have found a way to each other after all

Me: wow ok .you took it better than I expected

Thando: my love,I'm no saint..you see that husband of mine? He used to be my side dish..argh what I'm even saying? I cheated on my ghost boyfriend with him

Me: Thando stop joking like that!

Thando: I'm not..ok so my story goes like this..I hope you won't have nightmares..let's tell the ladies to get us something to eat because you will need energy for what im about to tell you...

-----TONY-----

Ever since Thali left I've been very busy. Using this time to cover everything so that when she comes back i can give her the undivided attention

It was around 3pm when the door opened and one of my housekeeper told me there's a man downstairs looking for me

I saved the document I was working on and went downstairs and found a young man looking around admiring the house

Me: afternoon bros

Mlamuli : hi my brother

We shook hands and I told him to sit down

Me: how can I help you?

Mlamuli: mhn I was looking for Thalitha and I was told that this is where she lives?

Me:(I frowned) yes this is her house..

Mlamuli:(shocked) you mean this is her house? As in the madam of the house?

Me:(chuckling) yes and I'm her man..again how can I help you?

Mlamuli: urhm..

Then the door opened Thali walk in looking all happy, but her face changed quickly when she saw Mlamuli..I realized that however they knew each other it's not good

Thali: what the hell? What are you doing here and how did you find me?

Mlamuli: Thalitha yehlisa umoya,I know you weren't expecting to see me here but I seriously need to talk to you and warn you about the danger thats looming over you..

Thali: I don't want to hear a thing from you!! You and your father put me through so much then you have a liver to tell me about a danger looming over me? Whereas you are the danger yourself? Get the hell out of here..I don't ever want to see you in my life again

I'm going up now and when I come back you better be gone

She ran the stairs..I was sure confused as hell,I I didn't know what was going on with them but right now the nigga he was a stranger in my house so I need to protect Thali..I stood up

Me: man I think you should leave

Mlamuli: mfowethu please beg her to listen to me..it's serious..Kim want to kill her..I know I can't do anything about the past but at least I can...

My face changed immediately..

Me: you said Kim? How do you know her?

Thali:(screaming from the bedroom) Tony what is that rapist still doing there? Oh my gosh I see you want me to have a third corpse on my name..wait for me I'm coming

I knew she will come down with the gun.. speaking of which.i need to get rid of it

I took the guy by his arm and dragged him out... I gave him my business card

Me: call me on that number after an hour or so I will calm her down and you will tell me what you are talking about

Mlamuli: sure brazo..

I closed the door and quickly ran to the bedroom..she was turning everything upside down looking for her gun

Thali: who took my gun that I kept here? Tony where's my gun?

I grabbed her and hugged her so tight because she was crying..we sat down she cried on my lap until she fell asleep..I tucked her on the bed and looked at her sleeping

Right now I don't want her to be angry or sad..not in this condition..

Her phone rang and it was this Thando girl..I answered trying my best to sound friendly

Me: Thalitha's phone hello

Thando: hello? Oh hi Tony can I get Thali?

She even knows me? Speak about being forward

Me: she's sleeping she's now well

Thando: oh my God what happened?

I rolled my eyes in totally boredom

Me: a guy by the name of Mlamuli was here and she lost it..she nearly shot him..

Thando: (half shouting) what? That rapist was there? The nerve!!

This was the second time he was labelled as a rapist

Me: what's going on?

Thando: that guy raped Thalitha! It's her half brother, the reason she ended up homeless!

Whaaaat? Wow.. Thali never really opened up about what happened between her and her family..she told us that her mother chose her man over her and that was it. A person who knows a bit is Kim..

I felt my blood boiling..I hung up and while I was still thinking my phone vibrated on my pocket. I took it out and a message from an unknown number came through

" Brazo I hope she has calmed down now.. please we need to meet"

It's him..I texted him the direction to the club to meet me there in thirty minutes

I looked at Thali and felt my heart broke..I kissed her forehead and walked out

I got on my car and drove to the club calling Seth on the way

Seth: Bros I'm actually on the way to your house with Nomfundo she wanted to..

Me: perfect.. please look after Thali for a while there's a situation I need to take care of at the club

Seth: you done sound so good what happened?

Me: just look after Thalitha I will be back

I hung up and threw my phone aside and concentrated on the road

-----KIM -----

Mlamuli has checked in the hotel, little does he know that his room has cameras and bugs ,thanks to Amber now I'm this evil schemer too

I've had him followed because i didn't trust his sudden change of decision..I mean one minute he doesn't want anything to do with the plan the next he's keen..I may have been dumb once but once bitten twice shy..I'm not going to be naive again

I watched him leave Tony house an hour ago then I saw Tony driving out moment later

Now this is my time I drove in, luckily I still have the code..

I'm wearing all black from head to toe to hide from cameras,I walk around and disable the alarms,

I got into the kitchen and realized that the maid is all alone

I lock all the doors going out from the kitchen and ran to Thali's bedroom..

She sleeping, perfect..I took out my syringe and drug her she woke up to the needle making contact with her body and I quickly cover her mouth with a handkerchief that's poisoned and she passed out immediately

She's so light so I carry her on my back using the back door and get her on the car and quickly drove out

The moment I turned the corner I saw Seth's car driving in with a speed.. luckily I'm not using my own car,it could have been suspicious and the windows of this car are tinted

I drove away in a speed thinking that it won't be long before this injection wears off...

My phone rang and Majola senior speak through the phone

Majola: how did it go?,

Me: so smoothly,I was quick.in and out.

Majola: perfect..I will be in joburg tomorrow morning.. keep tabs on that idiot son of mine

Me: I've got this and thanks for agreeing to team up with me

Majola:,no sweat

-----SETH -----

I drove in Tony's house like a Maniac.. Nomfundo gave me a murderous look but hey I don't care

I jumped out of the car and ran to the house..the helper realized that she's been locked inside..she was busy cleaning the cupboards that she didn't notice a thing

Seth ran to Thali's bedroom and found her phone and you could tell that she's been moved

He felt his skin getting rough and his eyes wet..he knew that his beast was now coming out..a sign of danger

He locked himself on Thali's bedroom because he didn't want Nomfundo to see him like that...

He used his knife to cut himself just so that he doesn't change

He dialed Sean's who picked up almost immediately

Sean: dude what's going on? My snake want to come out to play..who's in danger?

Me: Tony's pregnant girlfriend..she's been kidnapped

Sean: fuck!! Why do I get a reaction? Seth what did you do? Did you initiate the girl without Tony's permission

Me: that doesn't matter but Tony is our brother we need to help him

Sean : this is messed up..Tony will flip! Where is he?

Me: in the club I don't know he said he is going to take care of something

Sean: fuck ok I will go there you track Thalitha down

Me: ok I'm on it

I hung up and did breathing exercises and went to look myself on the mirror..fuck my face was so rough

I sat down on the floor..I can't go out looking like this...

-----MLAMULI -----

I was on the the third beer waiting for this Tony guy.. honestly I'm so scared..he walked through looking all angry and scary

Nigerian men have never been scary than when they are angry..he looked like he was about to murder me

Tony: my office

He led the way I followed him shaking

He let me get in and locked the door and ordered me to sit down

Tony: speak to

The way he said that word made me jump a bit

Tony: I hate repeating myself speak!

Right now I was sweating,peed on myself..this is harder than I thought..why did I even thought it was going to be easy

He stood up really frustrated and he unbuttoned his shirt..went to the safe and took out his gun..I moved back to the door with my eyes popped out ..

Tony: so you and your useless father raped my woman abi? Then you have the liver to come to my house to say Kim want to kill her..what's your plan? Who sent you?

He was breathing fire and my tongue was so tied I couldn't utter a word..then there was a knock..a hard rough knock..he didn't shift his attention from me when he told whoever who was knocking on the door to get lost

The knocker was persistent but after a few minutes it died down

Tony was still looking at me with those eyes that were green...

Then we heard something hissing in the room he quickly looked around..a huge snake was on the corner I screamed getting on top of the tables feeling my heart beating five times than normal, Tony cursed lowering the gun

Tony: what the fuck dude? How many times did I tell you that I hate this appearance of yours?

Wait..is this guy really talking to a python as if he's talking to the person? Then suddenly the snake changed to a full human being...a man in his late thirties now I felt dizzy..this is not real..no I'm dreaming and it's a nightmare

Sean: you weren't opening the door so what was I supposed to do,?

Tony: I was very busy in the middle of something...

I couldn't take it anymore..I felt everything being black and the ground spinning and it was light out for me

Sean: did he just passed out?

Tony:(laughing lightly) you scared him..looks like he peed on himself

Sean:oh man! Sies

They laughed hard then Sean got serious

Sean: they have taken Thalitha..that's why I'm here?

Tony: u said what?!

To be continued.. please drop your comment and let me know what you think of this one



[1/31, 15:50] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 35

(Sensitive readers please don't read,thank you)

-----TONY -----

I swear to God the moment Sean mentioned Thalitha being kidnapped I stopped breathing and everything came to a standstill..

I felt dizzy and Sean helped me sit down,I suddenly had a very painful headache with my heart beating so fast, if there's anything I don't want to see happening is Thali being on any kind of danger

I would never forget myself for that,I kind of blame myself for leaving early before Seth arrives,I should have waited a bit then none of this wouldn't have happened..

Clearly this Mncedisi guy wasn't lying to me about Kim, I wonder what did she do,I swear to God I will not forgive her if anything happens to Thali and my baby I will not..

Sean: calm down man remember Seth put a track on her so we'll find her

Me:(rubbing my face) you know this young man here was about to tell me about some plan Kim cooked to hurt Thali

Sean: whaaaaat? What's wrong with your baby momma?

Me: I have no idea, I don't know her ,looks like her friend's demons rubbed off to her

Sean: let's tie this mumu here and let's go look for Thali

We dragged Mlamuli to the storage room and tied him up..I locked the door and we walked out..

-----THALITHA-----

I woke up feeling dizzy,I tried to move and realized that my hands and legs are tied.

I looked around and realized that this is not Tony's house,it's not my bedroom..

Scenes of Mlamuli being in the house came back to me,I tried to move again hard this time and the rope hurt me,I felt so frustrated, then I heard footsteps coming near me..

To my surprise I saw Kim on her bum shots..she was really sexy..her body was goals.

She only had a bra and that shot and smoking

Me: Kim..what am I doing here?

Kim:oh you up.. finally..

Don't worry you will soon find out

Me: Kim please don't hurt me,let's talk and this please I bet you

Kim:(laughing) oh now she want to talk? Oh my gosh Thalitha I gave you an option you spat on my face..did you really thought I was going to let you have a happily ever after with my man?

I felt tears threatening my face..this cannot be happening..how can Kim do this to me?

Me: Kim I'm pregnant..

Kim: exactly why I'm doing this. With that thing gone on your stomach, there's nothing tying you and Tony..then he will forgive me..then me and Saint will be family again

Kim is really crazy to even think of that

Me:I don't know if you are crazy or stupid to even think that Tony will look at you the same after your whore ass was all over the net..you know I can have that video posted again..just like that..and see what's Saint will say when she learned that her mom is a porn star

A hot back slap landed on my face I'm sure it's left some fingerprint..I shook my head because wow she gave it her best

Kim: how dare you talk to me like that? If Tony can get a hard on over that damaged vagina that's been raped by nyoape boys then he definitely can forgive me

I don't know what happened and where did I get those power from but I jumped on her throat not caring if the ropes were hurting me or what..I used the last energy to strangle her..

She tried to free herself from me but I stuck on so hard

I felt another hand removing me from her and roughly throw me to bed..I realized I was now bleeding..the ropes had cut me..I was fuming my chest moving up and down,tears rolling uncontrollably

I saw my worst nightmare in front of me, he looked so horrible, unshaved with unkept beard on his face..

Majola: still feisty huh? Well we will use the energy later now sleep sweetheart

I suddenly felt like puking..he then drug me on my neck and it was light's out as I saw him attending Kim..

-----SETH -----

I have found the location of where Thalitha was kept..and by the looks of things ,it's not good .. judging by the tracker put in her..her heart beat was going slowly meaning she's been drugged

I heard car scratches and I knew my brothers were here...I walked out and climbed on the car

Tony was looking horrible,like he was shaking..fear was all over his body

Sean: are we armed Enough?

Me: not really necessary..the guns on us will do

Tony:(breaking voice) did you find her?

Me: yes I did and I suggest we move fast..in the meanwhile Tony call Brian to come to the location I will send to him now

Tony : why do you need Brian? Seth is something wrong with Thali?my baby?

Sean:just for casualties Tony call him

Tony:(swallowing hard) okay

----KIM ----

My throat was so dry and painful especially if I had to swallow my saliva, this bitch really went hard on my neck

I looked at the mirror and I was so red..it's like a wild animal attacked me

What am I saying because Thali is an animal? Thanks to Majola for coming at my rescue

I was showering in this warehouse..its only has one bedroom then a bathroom that had a toilet and shower combined

As I was stepping out of the shower Majola walked in .I quickly covered my naked body with the towel..

His eyes wandered all over my body and he cleared his throat

Majola: I'm sorry I've come to pee

Me: okay

I shifted for him as I used the other towel to wrap my wet hair..he peed and flushed the toilet, then came to stand behind me..his breathings caused me to shiver..

I turned and found him looking at me as if he were to eat me anytime..his eyes red

Me: urhm sorry can I go?

Majola:yima kancane sweetheart

Me:sorry what's that?

Majola:(his rough hand touched my face) you Know it's always been my fantasy to fuck a white girl..I've seen your video although it was quickly deleted but damn girl you are freaky

Geez I wanted to puke.. imagine this old stinking man saying that to me? But I had to keep my cool

Me: uhm thanks I guess

Majola: so how about a quickie here?

Me: huh? Are you crazy..no?

Majola:(annoyed) hey you little girl who do you call crazy? Huh? Didn't they teach you manners?

Me: I'm sorry just that I don't understand why you..

Majola: uyadelela wena dunusa! I was being nice by asking you now you think you clever..

As I was digesting what he was saying,He grabbed the towel roughly from me exposing my naked body out..she pushed me roughly to the toilet seat and had me hold it by my hand as I bent it for hik

I felt his trousers hitting his ankles as squeezed my bum with his big hand roughly I felt tears coming..my worst nightmare was happening

He opened my ass blowing air to my pussy making it so dry. my legs were shaking, he spanked me really hard

Majola: damn baby you are so sexy

With that he shoved his dick on my dry pussy I flinched with pain.. Tony is big because Nigerians are big and blessed down there but this..this is beyond normal..worse I wasn't aroused

He pushed the whole of his monster dick as I screamed..he roughly pulled me by my hair and choked me, the same neck Thali was strangling few minute ago

He banged me really hard as I cried, worse I had no voice.he would spank me or choke me as he enjoyed himself with me...

I felt him increasing his pace speaking foreign language then he quickly pulled out and turned me out..he put me on my knees and i saw blood going through my legs

He slapped my mouth with his dick soaked on sperms and ordered me to open my mouth he came on my mouth..I've swallowed before willingly but now..I just puked on his dick

He slapped me hard and went to wash his dick on the sink leaving me on the floor coughing. I thought he was done with me but he came and grabbed me roughly and made me hold the sink this time..

My face was wet and pink from crying..he shoved it on my ass and I jumped, I've never been a fan of anal sex before, without lubricant it was so painful, I felt as if my ass was cracking..he pushed it all in the pain increased double..

I just couldn't take it, I peed on myself ..

Majola: hey wena goba (bend)

My whole body was in pain..his think on my ass was causing me to shiver

He spanked me twice and hard I bent a little, he said good girl and humped on me..I shut my eyes as pain executed my body..he went all rough on me I felt the human waste coming

I tried to push him but he held on closer and I felt like I'm going to pass out after releasing some shit,I thought he was going to stop after that but no he continued till he was done

He pulled out his dick and went to the shower yelling that I should clean the mess..

I couldn't move an inch, my body was just so weak I sat down feeling each and every pain

He walked out showered looking at me with disgust and spat on the floor and walked out

Just as he opened the door he was sent flying back by two bullets that were fired and he fell right on the shit I've released

To be continued....

[2/5, 23:56] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 36

-----THALITHA-----

My eyes were closed, and I felt and saw myself Walking somewhere more peaceful,more quite

On my left side I saw a river, it's water was very scary, making those scary waves sounds, the more I listened and looked at it ,the more it's became so damn angry

I tried to get up and walk away from this scary surrounding but I was chained down, I moved up and down but I was chained and the chains were so painful

Now I was crying because the waves were getting nearer and very angry, I looked at them with pleading eyes to not drown me in..then this old man, a scary man I've never seen appeared next to me and pointed his walking stick to the water and they stopped dead..like stop..

I looked around at him, he smiled..I've never seen this man before, now I was more scared,I really wished this water swallowed me, as if he could read my mind, he knelt down next to me .

Man: come let's get you out of here..

Me: who are you? How did you find me?

Man: that doesn't really matter,what matters is that you need to get out of here, you are carrying a precious soul, and someone dear to you is in danger...get up and go save her..

Me: who?

Man:(screaming) get and go save her

The words were echoing in the whole room and I woke up so sweating, shit I was dreaming! What a dream! My body was so painful but reality kicked in..

I was kidnapped, and Im so not going to allow Majola to have his way with me again

I moved around a bit, Mt head was pounding like crazy but I forced myself up, surprisingly the ropes on my ankles and wrists just burn out

I was too confused at what the hell is happening? Am I still asleep? But hey I really don't have time to figure much out..I need to get out of here..

I touched my stomach and felt my heart beating so fast, I wore Kim's shoes I saw around and walked into the door..just as I was about to open it I saw Majola's jacket hanged on the chair in the room

I went to it and checked its pockets, luckily for me it was loaded up, full of bullets

I put it on my back and walked out..this warehouse is huge and very empty, I was trying not to walk in the middle where him or Kim could spot me

As I was passing some room I heard him groaning, curiosity kicked in I peeped in and what I saw sent shivers to my spine..

Majola was raping Kim brutal so! This whole thing brought some sad memories of that night he took my virginity, he wasn't so merciful, my cries were not enough for him to listen to me, he didn't care even when I begged him..he just choked me,just like he's choking her.

I closed my eyes as the scene of that day played on my mind,tears were rolling down uncontrollably

By the time I opened my eyes Kim was on the floor, a total mess, the voice came again" you need to go, someone dear to you is in danger"

Forget about the current and past circumstances and what Kim did to me, but no woman deserves this and to tell you the truth, I love her, I will always do

I wiped my tears and checked the gun, I heard Majola speaking, he then opened the door and he was shocked to see me right in front of his eyes

I didn't waste anytime, I fired 4 shots straight on his chest that sent him flying back to the room

Kim freaked out and jumped screaming looking at Majola falling on the mess she created, she looked at the door and saw me with the gun, she started shaking, im sure she thought I was going to shoot her too,to be honest I was now tempted .

I felt this huge anger, this rage in me, but I had to control it, I would never forgive myself if I were to kill Kim.

I closed my eyes with my gun on the head and opened them..

Me: go get yourself cleaned up we need to leave..

She stood there dumbfounded and I clocked the gun she jumped to the shower

Me: 5 minutes, that's what you have

I don't know where did I get this bravery from, I mean I wasn't scared at all, infact I was so so angry, I mean even the shit in front of me wasn't smelly

I went to get Kim from the shower and dragged her back to the room she had me tied up

She was shaking and sweating, her voice totally gone, I was so angry at her, but at the same time I felt for her

I grabbed her clothes and helped her on them and told her to move, I used her phone to call Tony but it was out of battery, great, just fucken great

I pushed her out of the warehouse with the gun..I couldn't care if she was still traumatized or what .I need to go home, I need to be in Tony's hands right now..I know it's sounds a bit selfish but it's what I want

We were still going around this huge warehouse when she sniffed and asked where I'm taking her and if I'm going to kill her.. honestly I don't know

Then the door down the hall banged loudly, I shoved her behind me and pulled out my gun, the door was kicked down and I saw Seth, Tony, Brian and Sean running in with guns

The moment I saw them I dropped mine and allowed my self to feel weak..I just dropped down and cried..

Tony rushed to me and hugged me tight while Kim has her hands on her chest next to me , she was scared

We hugged for dear life with Tony while he was checking me up, he saw the bruises on my ankles and wrists and went mad, Seth grabbed Kim by her hair and she screamed I stood up separating them

Seth was fuming, he wanted to kill Kim and bury her now

Me:(roaring) Seth enough man! I said enough! Why can't you hear me? No one will touch or harm Kim in anyway do you hear me?

Seth: it's just I don't understand why you keep on helping and defending this bitch after everything she put you through..just allow me to put a bullet on this thing and all of this madness will be over

Seth wasn't listening really, he slapped Kim and she fell on the floor, he hit her after I've told him no one should do

I grabbed the gun and shot his leg..he roared going down, the other guys looked at me with so much terror

Me:I hate people who don't listen! I fucken hate them..I told y'all no one should touch her but what do you do? Exactly the opposite!

They just stood there shocked.. Brian moved to his Uncle to check his bleeding leg, now I felt bad , I mean Seth has been good to me, but naye akezwa marn!

Me: okay guys I'm sorry, it's just that this whole thing is messed up and I'm not really feeling good right now

I said wiping my tears, Tony wanted to come near me but he was scared I could see it in his eyes

Me: I hate Kim so much at the same time I love her to death.. I understand that she was hurt and did something without thinking, I know that nothing I will say will make sense but seeing Majola raping her like that, breaking her soul and taking everything from her touched me

It's just brought back the night he raped me, Tony, I know you are angry baby but please don't kill or harm her please .just take her to the hospital, she was really brutal raped, please my love..

If you won't do it for me then do it for Saints, she's Still young and she needs her mother

If you kill her now, what are you going to tell her in the future when she asks you about her mother?

The tears were streaming down on my face like a river, Tony softened up looking from Kim to me then walked to me and hugged me.

He kissed my forehead and God knows how much that kiss brought sanity to me

Tony: it's ok.. Brian, get Kim and Seth to the hospital

Seth: no way, im not riding with this witch..

Tony: SETH!!!

Seth looked down and nodded, Brian and the other brother who was quite all along helped them out, Tony also insisted that I go to the hospital for a few check up

-----TONY -----

Seth, Brian, Kim and I drove to the hospital leaving Sean behind to take care of Majola's corpse

It's a pity that we found him dead already, I really wanted to see Sean swallowing him up alive, but one thing I know for sure is that he's still suffering even on his death, now I need to make sure my woman is ok then go deal with Mlamuli and Kim once and for all.

We arrived at the hospital, Kim was the emergency case, while Seth just got stitched up

I must admit how Thalitha is so friendly with the gun scares me, I should make sure I get rid of all the guns in the house, she's so dangerous and she doesn't hesitate to pull the trigger , but fuck that's such a huge on, how she just take care of the situation made me to be more impressed.

We did all the scans, my baby was fine, she was prescribed some medication for shock and to keep her high blood pressure in check.

The doctor strongly advised her to take it easy, I'm sure going to make sure that I do that.

We drove home with her sleeping on my lap. I carried her to my bedroom and tucked her in up until she fell completely asleep

Seth was downstairs drinking my expensive alcohol, I got downstairs and he was limping on his third bottle

I took the bottle away from him and sat down, luckily Sean got in, he looked so drained

Me: how did it go?

Sean:(grabbing the bottle from me and drinking from it) it's done but damn, your woman did a messy job yerr!

Me: I don't want to hear if

Seth:(smiling) but small is so feisty, you know when she pulled that trigger I was like " yes girl" I even forgot that she was shooting me,the way y'all just froze,it was amazing, wish we could have had that on camera

We laughed out loud , yeah it was really an interesting scene

Me: you are crazy Bros..guys there's something that doesn't make sense, Thali tells me that she was tied up right,by Kim. Then this fool drugged her , then she has a dream about some old man rescuing her and she woke up ,and the ropes we're burned..

They looked at each other and looked away..

Sean: you better tell him before he found out later..

Me: tell me what?

Seth:(clears his throat) remember the night we were in the hospital when you asked me to put the tracker on her?

Me: yeah yeah I remember?

Seth:(looking at Sean) well I kinda initiated her ..the old man who rescued her it's our late grand father...

I stood up..this better be a joke..Seth is joking!

Me: you did what? Tell me you didn't.. Sean, please tell me that your brother didn't put my woman in this voodoo tradition y'all do without my permission..

Sean:(standing up) bros come down..hear him out .

Me: no,no, no ,no, no I don't want to hear a thing,! I left the family legacy and started my own thing because I didn't want anything that's going to connect me with with craft..

Now Seth goes behind my back to initiate her..I don't want to be indebted to any witch.

Sean: Tony watch it man,

Me: hey hey don't tell me shit.. I don't want that life I thought I made myself clear wasn't I?

Seth: I was just trying to help..you know how the Roberts bloodline is always targeted..so I had to make sure that she's safe and look at how it's turned out..

Me: Seth I Know you meant well but sometimes you have to respect my choices and decisions..this is the road I don't want to go. I will have her uninitiated

Sean&Seth : what? You can't do that!.

Me: watch me! Now please leave my house, the both of you..I need some time with my woman

Sean:(sigh) I know that you are angry and I apologise on his behalf, we are sorry, but please calm down and think with a clear mind..don't make rush decisions while you are still angry ok?

I will go check on that boy in your office, what do you want me to do with him?

Me: keep him safe for now until I know what to do

They stood up and left with Seth full of regret, I know he meant well but he shouldn't have..he knows very well how I feel about this.

Now it's explains why Thali's moods were all over the place back there..it's because of this animal they put in her

I will be so damned if I allowed my kid to be born with this thing, I don't want it

I took my phone and dialed my pastor and a friend..

Mncedisi: Roberts

Me: my brother,you good?

Mncedisi: I'm good, in fact I'm great

Me: I can imagine, I need to see you..

Mncedisi: well my honeymoon has been extended to a week here so yeah

Me:ok as soon as you are back please call me ,it's really urgent

Mncedisi: okay I will do just that, In the meantime I will be praying for you that whatever that's bothering you shall come to pass

Me: I will truly appreciate that, thank you and enjoy your honeymoon

I walked to my room and Thali was not in bed, my heart beat so fast and I ran to the bathroom and there she was , wrapped on a towel with her hair wet

But guys have I told you how gorgeous and sexy my woman is, to think that I nearly lost this wonderful human being..

Thali: you know it's so rude to stare right?

Me:(smiling walking to her and held her waist) well I can't help it.. your are so damn sexy and beautiful

She wrapped her arms around me and kissed my lips lightly

Thali: well thank you..you are handsome as well

Me: how are you feeling though? Don't you think we need a therapy?

Thali:(moving away from me) nope I'm fine,in fact I'm feeling great..

Me: sure?

Thali:(lotioning her body) yep, positive. I mean I've been through worse..this is nothing

Me:(I held her hand and kissed it) exactly why I feel like we should see someone..for someone your age, you have been through a lot

Thali:(brushing my face smiling) you are really sweet..but honestly I'm fine and knowing that you are here with me gives me courage

She smiled and put on her clothes that I don't know when she fetched from her room

Me: are you going somewhere?

Thali: yes, I need to go check up on Kim, did you called her mom?

Me: we did when we left, but Thali you should be resting, you heard the doctor's orders right?

Thali: I'm just going to do an in and out..just to make sure if she's ok..I will be back quickly I promise

Me: okay can I drive you at least?

Thali:(rolls her eyes) ok fine but I really wanted to go alone

I'm not taking any chances, especially with Kim involved, I also changed to new clothes and we left the house driving in silence to the hospital

We arrived and packed the car and walked in..she had flowers with her,

We saw Brian on our way to her ward, he stopped us

Brian: hey folks, Thali, so good to see you up and kicking in few hours

Thali: yeah well, what can we say.. how's Kim?

Brian: eix not good

Me: what's wrong?

Brian: shortly after you left she tried to kill herself..she jumped out of the window from her ward

Thali:(dropping flowers and covering her mouth) no!

Brian: eix it's bad, she's been sedated and treated..she suffered few injuries from the head and legs but she will live

Thali:(tears streaming down her face) can I please go see her?

Brian: I'm sorry I can't..I really can't..but we found some letter under her pillow and it's for you

He gave Thali the letter..she took it and went to sit down..she read it silently with tears streaming down her face

I went to sit next to her and hold her by her shoulder as she cried on mine .I took the letter and read it

" Thali

My wonderful sister

I dont know where to begin .I know that this might sound useless but I'm really really sorry

For everything, you really are a good person,how you have been looking out for me, one would swear you are the big sis here

Now I know that Tony scored himself a gem with you, I'm giving you my blessings, I know you will make each other so happy.

Please look after my baby Saints, I will rest in peace knowing that she's with you.. I will speak to mom to hand her to you whenever you are ready.

I think it's time I go and meet my maker

I love you and please take care of yourself

Kim"

Wow..this letter somehow touched me, I think I am ready to forgive her

-----5 days later -----

-----KIM -----

I was slowly recovering,to my disappointment. I really wanted to die..this world has been so cruel to me, my mom is very mad at me, in fact my whole family..she hasn't brought my daughter to see me and I miss her so much

My dad said he is disowning me, that's a bit harsh,I know that I may have disappointed him but , disowning me really? Wow. I don't care really, me and Mr Moon, yes my father were never close , it was even worse when his favorite child ,m y late younger brother passed on,it's like he blamed me for his death

The whole past 3 days Thali has been coming and holding my hand throughout my sleep, I would hear every word and be scared to face her

But now I think I am ready, I will never forget how much she helped me, always going out of her way to help me, even when she didn't have to, when I had hurt her..she still helped me

I was doing the physio training with my physiotherapist when I saw Thali standing there looking at us

She was looking better, dressed on jeans and a shirt,her hair let loose

When our eye contact met, she came to me running and threw herself at me.. hugging me..I made sure I don't fall because I did hurt myself when I jumped out of that window

Me: easy ..

Thali: sorry..how are you?

Me:well as you can see..I'm doing better

Thali: I'm so mad at you right now..

Me:(my heart skipped a bit) I know Thali and I'm sorry, sorry for everything..I mean I know I allowed jealousy to get in the way..

Thali:(narrowing her eyebrow) what?

Oh urgh marn I'm not there.. we'll get to that later..I'm mad at you for trying to kill yourself..

What did you want me to tell Saints? Don't ever try that shit again because I might just do you a favor and kill you for real

I Chuckled nervously thinking that she could really do that..

Thali: I have a present for you..close your eyes

Me:Thali come on...

Thali: please.. doctor make sure she doesn't cheat

I laughed and closed my eyes..I closed them maybe for a minute and few seconds or two minutes I'm not sure..

Thali: alright..now open them

I opened them slowly and Saints was standing in front of me smiling..I felt tears burning my eyes and I was so happy, I just didn't know what do say

I balanced my leg careful and picked her up..I kissed her while she wrapped her little arms around me

Thali: your mom and Tony doesn't know she's here..they don't want to expose her to this scene

So you have like an hour..

Me: you still show me kindness even after everything I did to you?

Thali: Kim I told you I'm not here for that today.. we'll get to that don't rush..for now save your energy and give your daughter some love

Me: thank you

Thali: i will be at the reception

She walked away and I looked at my daughter.. guilty washed me when I thought I nearly made my daughter motherless because I was a coward to face my consequences of my actions

Saints: mommy

Me: yes baby

Saints: I missed you

Me: me too my love..I promise mommy isn't going anywhere right now..I will be here always

I kissed her nose and ears she giggled and that was music to my ears...

To be continued...

(My people like I said that this is a very hectic week to me, indeed it is..on top of that I'm dealing with loadshedding andji network so please calm down)



[2/8, 19:55] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 37

-----NARRATED -----

A MONTH LATER

-----KIM -----

Things were going a bit better now although I wouldn't say they were good but yeah it's better, my mom forgave me eventually, well as for my dad we are still a bit sour but I hope he will come around

I've been attending therapy with Thali's support, that woman is godsend,her heart is so kind and I've never met anyone so amazing.

Now I've finally let go of Tony and kind of accepted that me and him were not mean to be.

It's hurts sometimes but seeing him that happy makes me happy.

He has allowed me back to my daughter's life, and we also had a long deep talk where we forgave each other.

I was trying to pickup pieces of my life and move on, now the struggle was getting a job. Mom told me that I shouldn't rush myself to go back to work but honestly I can't just laze around because that will drive me mad even some more..

My door bell rang and I wiped my hands as I've been doing dishes, I wondered who could it be because everyone was at work, Saints at daycare so I was practically alone..

I went and opened the door, and to my surprise it was Thalitha, she carried pizza and some snacks , she was really glowing and happy, this pregnancy looked really good on her..she was about 4 months now and you wouldn't say

Thali: hey I thought we should do some lunch..done with the classes

Me: (hugging her) you such a darling and I am so famished

Thali: well then I'm right on time..get plates and let's dig in

She put down her bag and we dished up, the way she was moaning while eating the pizza caused me to laugh

Me: you must have been hungry

Thali:(wiping her mouth) you have no idea sis..

Anyway how are you doing and everything?

Me: well I'm doing better honey, with the therapy I'm definitely going to be ok

Thali:(smiling) now that's what I want to hear, that's the spirit..keep going on it honey and you will be fine..I survived u Majola and you can too, just don't push yourself

Me: yeah you are right, sometimes I wish I could go away for a while..just to regroup you know

Thali: I hear you and that's actually not a bad idea at all, you can take maybe a month or two vacation to any destination of your choice..

Me: right? Like go to Thailand or something..

Thali: yes! Who knows you might score yourself a hot Chinese husband

We laughed out and it was good laughing..

Me:you are silly, a Chinese really? Please

Thali: it won't be such a bad idea I mean, you will have adorable kids

Me:(wiping my tears while waving her off) you are crazy I give up.. speaking of kids, how's the one growing in you?

Thali:(smiling and touching her belly) doing well if you may ask .I never thought it was this amazing to fall in love with someone you haven't met like the way I'm love with my child..

Me:(smiling) ncooh this is so cute right now..I'm so happy for you lil sister and I really mean it, you are going to be an awesome mother..

Thali: I hope I can be hey..I really want to do better than my mother..

Speaking of mother's, Tony want me to make peace with her and Mlamuli..

Me : how is it going with that one?

Thali:(shrugging her shoulders) I really don't know and don't care..I really don't want them in my life..

Me: why Tony wants you to reunite with them? I mean it's a bit too soon..

Thali: that what I've been telling him..thing is he want us to get married before I give birth and he want to do it right..

Me:(shocked) oh my gosh has he proposed?

Thali:(smiling) not entirely but we have been playing around that topic a lot lately

Me:(covering my mouth) ok ok okay now I'm excited..oh my gosh you are getting married!

Thali:(rolls her eyes) let's not get too excited..u guy hasn't proposed and I might say no

Me: what the hell for?

Thali: just for control nje

Me: (pushing her lightly) you wouldn't dare do that

She laughed and we spoke some more then it was time to go fetch Saints, we drove in her car and Saints was over the moon to see her..it was such a beautiful sight to see

I now know for a fact that if anything happens to me, my daughter will be safe with her and be loved accordingly..

-----BUSANI KHOZA -----

Lady: so this is the third one, it's has 5 room bedroom, a dining room, lounge and the 2 kitchen, each bedroom has the bathroom, a study, bar, pool, two double garage, a beautiful garden,

It has an open view...

Me: how much?

Lady: sorry sir?

Me: I'm asking how much this house will cost me?

Lady: this one sir is 3 million and the monthly installment is..

Me: I'm taking it..

I snapped my fingers and my assistant gave me the cheque book..I signed it and gave it to her, shock was written all over her face as she took it

Me: so how soon can I move in here?

Lady:(still shocked) uhm give me 5 days to clear the sell of this house then you can move in..

Me: make it 3 days.. and about the interior decorating, my assistant will sort that one out.

Lady: ok sir let me get to it then

Me: very well then

I took my cigar and lit it going around slowly observing the house, well it's beautiful I won't lie..

Well where are my manners, I'm Busani Khoza, the first born, I'm 28 years old,Im single and sadly I don't have a child yet, me and my sister who's 26 were raised by my grandma who passed on few months back, her death hit us hard, I was hoping that the woman called mother would show up ,but sadly she

didn't, only Khoza showed up..he is married to another woman now and moved on but he has always been present on our lives, on my other business he's my partner.

And I've also partnered with my sister on some media company, she does all the work, I just show face when it's shareholders meeting.

I've always been busy traveling the world making money from the age of 18, I really didn't have time to play daddy, I've always used a condom, it was only once when this bitch tried to trap me with the pregnancy but I had her abort it..cruel I know but I didn't have a choice

Now that I've made enough money I think I'm ready to settle down and start a family and there's no better place to do that than here at home.

I'm your typical tall black and handsome guy, wherever I go ladies turn their heads to stare on my direction, I won't say that I'm bragging but I'm hot and I know it.

Another thing that makes it hard for me to be in a relationship is that I'm very picky, I just don't hook up with anyone.. the lady to be Mrs Khoza should be streetwise, have beauty and brains then I'm sorted..I'm not really fussy in the looks department as long the person is smart and be able to contribute on the lifestyle we'll live then I'm cool

I finished smoking and walked to my car, I opened the door for my assistant and got in the driver's seat and drove away to the hotel I will be staying in for a while since my house is being sorted out

I would have gone back home but now since my grandmother died, unknown relatives showed up and claimed the house to be theirs after I've spent so much renovating it, but because I love peace I let them be and moved out

I don't want to taint my grandmother's image by busy fighting with them, well my sister has found herself a blesser if I may so, she's dating one rich gangster in a suit guy called Johnathan George, I've did a research about him, he's okay I hope he treats my sister right.

-----THALI-----

I got home from my classes and I was a bit tired, now I'm starting to feel that I'm pregnant and I'm sure it's going to be such a long road

I just threw myself at the couch and put my feet on the coffee table and did breathing exercises..

Tony: hey honey

He appeared from the kitchen wearing apron, I smiled a lazy smile and looked at him

Me: hey baby

He came to me and kissed me then kissed my stomach

Tony: how was your day?

Me : tiring like hell hey..and yours

Tony : it was good, very good actually

Me: I can tell by the mood, do tell

Tony : (smiling) there's nothing to tell.. listen how many paints have you painted so far?

Me: about 7, you know lately I'm lazy,I think I need an inspiration

Tony:I see, so how about I display some of your paints at the club?

Me: you would do that for me?

Tony:(smiling) anything for my woman..

Me:(squealing) I would love that..so how much are we charging each painting?

Tony: I don't know..but I was thinking we start from 3000 ...

Me: Tony! That's a lot!

Tony:baby come on,art is very expensive, I mean everywhere you go paintings are expensive, you see the one on the wall?

Me: yeah?

Tony: I bought it with R20 000

Me:(gasping with shock) that much?

Tony:(laughing) baby if you take this seriously you will never go hungry I promise you

Me: wow..ok maybe we can taste the water with that money

Tony: okay then.. let me dish up so that I can run you a hot bath

He perked my lips and I smiled, he's such a wonderful man and I don't deserve him really

He dished up while we spoke about random things that include me fixing things with my mom, well I guess at some point I have to..

He ran me the bath where he washed my back, massaged me and made sweet love to me and I passed out like a baby

In the morning I was so lazy to wake up but I had to..I took a bath and Tony was making breakfast, I made the bed and finished up dressing and went to the kitchen where he was whistling, someone is really on a good mood

Tony: morning cupcake

Me: someone woke up on the good side of the bed..

Tony:(kissed me and brushed my stomach) what can I say? I'm a satisfied and a happy man

Me: mhm okay..what's for breakfast?

Tony: full English breakfast made by yours truly, Tony..sit down I will dish up

I smiled and sat down, he dished up and sat down to eat too..

Tony: so baby what Time are your classes finish ?

Me:(eating) around 12, why?

Tony: I would like to take you somewhere after that

Me: okay... where?

Tony: it's a surprise but believe me you will love it..finish up babe I'm driving you to school today

I just smiled and finished eating, I went to get my bag and got on the road..

-----TONY -----

I was at the club and it was getting busy already for a Friday midday, people were going crazy on our specials that we run here every Friday

I've came with two of Thali's best painting and hanged them on the wall, I kept on checking the time and I was nervous each time when I realized that 12oclock was near

I can't wait for her to see her surprise, I hope she likes it.

12 came and I signed off and went straight to the campus,just as I was pulling over I saw her with some girl talking. She saw me and walked to my car after hugging the lady

She got in and she was in a better mood..

Thali: hey baby

Me:(kissing her) you look happy..

Thali: well my man is about to surprise me and at the same time I passed well

She showed me her printed results and wow, I was beyond proud, she really did well..

Me: wow baby this is so amazing.. congratulations

Thali: well thanks baby,I didn't think I was going to pass so well after having such a rough year.. now I'm left with only practicals then I will be doing my final year next year..and to think I will be so heavily pregnant stresses me out

Me: don't worry baby,you have me here so we'll figure something out together and I will be with you every step of the way

Thali:(smiling) what did I do to deserve you?

I just blushed and started the car and we drove around to our neighborhood and parked to this building..I opened the door for her and held her hand going in

We walked up the elevator and we got in to this beautiful studio, I had her eyes closed all the way up

I finally opened her eyes and she looked around, shock and excitement written all over her face, this is the studio I'm planning on renting for her..I've paid 6 months up front just to try it..if it doesn't work of which I doubt will happen we'll close it

She looked around all silent and I was starting to worry, she finally turned and ran up to me and hugged me tight, she pulled out from the hug and kissed me all over my face and I couldn't help but laugh

Thali:(teary) thank you,thank you and thank you again..this is perfect, the view to the city, how the sun reflect on this window I mean everything is perfect..Tony you are the best

Me: I'm glad you love it baby..

Thali: I love you so much

Me: I love you even more

We shared a passionate kiss that ended up with us undressing each other and her holding the table with me hitting it from behind..

After the mini house warming we went home to change, we first ate and had more sex..she decided to go with me to the club to see how people react to the painting

We went there and it was getting packed, she chilled at the VIP, Kim joined her later and I left them talking to get drinks

Kim: so Thali here tells me that you got her a studio, you did well Tony

Me: well she deserves nothing but the best

She shook her head in agreement, then her eyes shifted to the gentleman who walked in and went to the bar

Kim : wow! Tony , you never told me that such guys visit this place..guy is hot dzamn

Thali: very fine ..

I cleared my throat and they laughed, I looked at the guy, I'm a fine man myself but I must admit, this guy here was handsome, he was making lot of guys to breath through the wound without saying anything..I mean all the ladies in here had their eyes on him..

Me: let me go check what he want

Kim: and please introduce us..well me

I just laughed shaking my head and went to him

Me: sorry Bros have you been served?

He didn't respond to me,his eyes were fixed on the painting above us .I snapped my fingers he turned to me,

Busani: sorry what was that?

Me: I'm asking if you have been served?

Busani: oh not really, I just got here..

I called my waitress and he asked for a beer ,that was impressive, judging by his physical appearance I assumed he was going to go for the expensive bottles

Busani: thats really a good art you have there.. are you selling?

Me: yes.. actually my girlfriend painted that, I was just displaying it for her around..

Busani: wow she's really creative and talented, looking at this picture I see a lot of emotions and a detailed story..

Me:(smiling) oh yeah?

Busani:(drinking his beer) I'm a fan of painting and this here is amazing..the colours she used..wow classic

Me:well I think she would be happy to hear this coming from you. Let me get her

He nodded and I went to get them ladies because Kim didn't want to be left behind

Me: this is Kim, and this is Thalitha,my girlfriend and the owner of those paintings

His eyes widened as he shook her hand

Thali:(smiling) my boyfriend here tells me that you like my painting

Busani: wow woman you are so talented at such a young age and I'm telling you right now you are going to places..

So tell me, how much are you selling these?

Thali:urm we have decided to go with 3000 for each..just for now..

Busani: that small ? Girl you need to start high so
that your customers will get used to it..

I recently moved around and bought a house, I seriously think they will fit so well on my passage and my study

So I'm going to buy each with R10 000

He said taking out his cheque book, Thali and I looked at each other and I gave her the " I told you look"

He signed over the cheque and gave it to her..she couldn't believe it that she was 20 000 richer overnight

Thali: wow thank you so much..

Busani: it's a pleasure, do you mind if maybe I get your number so that I can refer some of my friends to you?

Thali: not at all, and my boyfriend just got me a studio around so yeah you can pop by sometimes

Busani: I will definitely do so

I got someone to wrap them paints for this guy while Thali wrote down her number and the address of the studio

All this time Kim was taken, she really liked the guy..

I took Thali's hand and walked away so that they could talk

Kim:(smiling) so Busani...

Busani: yes..

Kim: I notice that you are not from around..

Busani: and how did you get to that conclusion?

Kim: well I can't be too sure, but I guess your accent and your appearance..

Busani: (laughing a little) well I guess I will take that as a compliment..look Kim it's been greet seeing you but now I think I should go

Kim: but you just got here?

Busani:I'm not really a fan of these,I was just checking it out, turns out I was actually drawn by these paintings I saw through the window while driving

Kim:(disappointed) oh..

Busani: yeah so let me bounce ok?

He stood up and left, Kim came back to us all disappointed

Kim: such a jerk

I suppressed my laugh and stood up leaving them to gossip about the guy...

To be continued..do leave some comment so that I will know what you think of this one

Much love♥

[2/9, 15:47] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 38

---BUSANI KHOZA ---

After finishing my beer I took my paintings and headed to the car, I put them safely on the back seat and drove straight to the hotel

I was thinking about the few minutes conversation I had with those three people at the club, this Tony guy seems like a good guy who loves his girlfriend and would do anything to keep her happy, of which is cute and admirable.

Then the girlfriend, wow I dont even know what to say, she's just amazing, those few words she said just proved how amazing she is, judging by the colour and details of her paintings, I can tell that she's been through a lot and she's strong.

Kim, sigh, I don't know what to say about her. She's beautiful no lie and if I'm not mistaken it's my first time seeing a beautiful white woman with a beautiful body like hers, one would swear I'm cold the way I blew her off, no I'm not, I just don't like desperate ladies and I smelled it from her.

I arrived at the hotel and put them paintings on my case carefully and went to grab a beer from the fridge while studying this other one that actually caught my attention.

It was a girl, looking down with tears dropping, the environment around her, joburg high buildings, the sun even smoke maid by a passing train..wow..such a pretty work..

I took the paper where she wrote down her number, I punched her numbers saving them, then I went to WhatsApp and saw her on display picture.

She had the same picture, except on WhatsApp she was just quite but looking down.

I looked deep at the pictures and logged out and opened my laptop and started working..

-----THALITHA-----

It's been 2weeks now since Tony got me the studio,I've been so motivated that I've been able to paint another 20 Pictures, every morning I wake up and drove around just for inspiration.

Tony says I shouldn't strain myself but he has given me a purpose to live..today it's the lunch of the studio and I'm nervous and excited at the same time

Thanks to Thando and Kim who made sure that everything runs smoothly, they invited a few media, just two journalist from high publication, one publication is from Thando's stepmother, Busisiwe Khoza

Then friends and family, nervous are working on me but I hope everything is going to be well

The event starts with the deejay playing soft music, starters and drinks being served around,I was on my below the knee peach offshoulder dress, white heels.

I looked good I must say, the event was going well with people buying my work,my mouth was starting to get tired from all the smiling and shaking hands

Just when we were left with 7 paintings the guy from the club who bought my first paintings walked in and suddenly the air stopped

He has that appearance that demanded respect without saying anything, he was looking all kinds of yummy on a Navy and powder blue suit .

I smiled and walked up to him shaking his hands

Me':I thought you weren't coming

Busani: I wouldn't miss it for the world..I'm sorry I'm late, I was at Cape Town sorting something

Me: well I'm just glad you manage to come..phela you are my first customer

Busani:(smiling) true..we were not formally introduced that day..I'm Busani Khoza..

Me:(shaking his hand) Thalitha Grootbrom

Busani: pleased to meet you

Me: same here, please come and join us..mingle and I will get someone to get you drinks

He nodded and went to stand by the display of pictures

I went to get Kim to attend him and she was delighted to do so

Everything went well and it was time to end the function, I don't want to get into details how much I made tonight but @I made money baby..out of the 25 paintings I had , we managed to sell out 20 which means 5 were remaining.

It's was such a mind blowing experience and I was over the moon.

We drove home busy talking about the events of the day and I was so happy ,the moment we got home, Tony closed the door and attacked me with a kiss and picked me up to our bedroom

Me:(giggling) oh easy tiger..

Tony:(removing my dress) I'm so proud of you, you really did well tonight

He took my dress and planted a soft peck on my stomach and made sweet love to me I dozed off immediately after that..

-----KIM-----

I was woken up by the sun flashing through the bedroom, I lazily opened my eyes ..my head was pounding, hangover

I remember last night I tagged along with Busani to go turn up on some club around..he's so uptight but being the gentleman he is, he didn't refuse so we went to the club and had it down

We came back in the woo hours of the morning and I was so sloshed, the last time I was this drunk , Amber was alive..argh why am I even talking about her?

I sat up and looked around and realized that this room was gorgeous, I stepped out of the bed and I was on male pyjamas, my clothes were nicely folded and on the couch in the room

I thought about it and realized that Busani undressed me and dressed me on his pyjamas

I smiled and went to the shower.. after showering I got dressed and walked out..

I noticed two of Thali's paintings put up on the passage and they fitted so well

When I got to the kitchen he just got down from putting another one up, wow they really fit this place

He was on his shots and a vest, his big and strong arms, damn..these suits hide so much beauty

He noticed me staring and smiled

Busani: morning sleepy head

Me: morning..why did you leave me in bed

Busani:(chuckling) we didn't sleep on the same bed.. I dropped you on the guest bedroom and went to mine

Me:(shocked) why?.

Busani: I'm not that type of guy Kim..are you hungry because I'm making breakfast?

Me:yeah sure and I have a terrible hangover

I sat down on the stool and he poured me some green smoothie to drink saying it will help with the hangover and honestly it was tasting so horrible but I drank half of it

I then watched him cook, he's fast in everything he does even the way he chop, I was even scared thinking that he will chop his fingers

Me: so Busani are you involved?

Busani: no I'm single and I've been for as long as I remember

Me:but why would a handsome successful guy like you be single?

Busani: I was just busy traveling the world building my empire..I really didn't have time to love a woman..you know how you guys are..

Me:(smiling) yeah..we love attention

Busani: exactly so I wasn't ready..but I've had a lot of sex

Me: of course you have..how old are you?

Busani: 28 and yourself?

Me: 26...so are you looking? Any kids?

Busani: yes I'm looking and no I don't have kids like I said I didn't have time

Me: mhm ok..so tell me what are you looking for in a woman?

Busani: mhmm let me see? She has to be smart, goal driven, a Hustler, beautiful, love herself more than she loves me.. other than the rest will be a bonus really

Me: wow

Busani: I want someone who will be able to add 2 to the one I place on the table, you get me?

Me: I hear you..

Busani: so what's up with you?

Me:(sigh) well I've recently broke up with my baby daddy after being together for 6 years,it was really hard, still it is

Busani: I can' tell..I'm sorry, heartbreaks are painful, I had my heart real when I was 18 , that's when I vow to get away from women and relationship stress and chased money

Me:yeah hey..

Busani: so what happened if you don't mind me asking?

Me:(swallowing) I cheated on him and he cheated back on me with someone so close to me..

Busani:(whistling) madoda!

Me: yeah its life hey..everyday I look at them how happy they are and I get to realize how much I've messed up

Busani: askies..it's life, you will find someone you deserve one day or fix things with him who knows

Me: I highly doubt if we will ever get back together again

Busani: Anyway here's your breakfast

He said handing me a mouthful clean diet breakfast. No wonder he has such a sexy body, he eats clean

We ate the breakfast with him telling me about him traveling the world, he looks intimidating yet he's so cool.

I helped him clear the dishes and he gave me a tour of his house and my my..this was out of this world..this house was beautiful..

Around 11 he dropped me off and proceeded to his destination..I was smiling all alone thinking about our conversation.

Maybe this is a start of a good thing to come..shit! He didn't ask for my number and I didn't ask for his, worse I didn't even ask for his surname

I will ask Thali though..

-----TONY -----

I was brushing her hair with my finger as she slept peaceful on my chest, this woman is amazing, God I don't know what did I do right to deserve her

She's just a godsend, she stir and woke up, looked at me and smiled

Thali: good morning baby

Me: (kissing her) good morning baby, how did you sleep?

Thali:we slept well I can't complain..

Baby

Me: yes love?

Thali: I'm thinking of going to see my mom,I think I'm ready and it's time

Me: wow that's great news..when?

Thali: today

Me: that's a bit too soon but baby..

Thali: Tony don't start please, you have been on my case about this and now I want to go you are stopping me what's wrong kanti with you?

Me: okay okay .I'm not fighting.. I will drive you to the airport.. before you argue, you will not be driving

Thali:(sulking) no Tony I want to drive..I wanna arrive at home with my car..

Me: then you are going tomorrow after you have rested well enough

Thali: baby I'm going home and I'm going today..

I hate it when Thali is this stubborn, I just got off from bed..

Thali: and now where are you going?

Me:to smoke

I banged the door , I went to my study and locked myself in there and got busy with work just to keep busy and cool down

She appeared from the door all dressed up and looking sexy...

Thali: im leaving, I will call you as soon as I get home..

Me: okay..safe journey and take care of my baby Thali

Thali: you won't even hug me goodbye?

Me: just go Thali, you want to leave me right? Just go?

Thali: wow, I really don't have time for this melodramatic behavior from an grown ass man

She slammed the door and walked away, I sighed and sat up, I looked through the window and saw her car driving out

I grabbed my cigar and smoked, when I was done I went back to the bedroom and sulk up until I fell asleep

I was awoken up by a phone call and saw that my room was dark..wow I slept that long..I answered on a horse voice

Me: hello

Thali:hey I'm calling to let you know that I've arrived home safe

Me:(I checked the time it was now 6 pm damn I really slept long) oh that's good, how's everyone?

Thali: my mom is good, she was actually shocked and happy to see me,we have been talking for the past two hours, it's been deep

Me: talking is the first good step, I'm glad you took this route

Thali: yeah yeah but you were the one sulking when I left earlier..

Me: im so used having you around that it's hurt when you leave..

Thali: shame babe,I will be back soon..I'm not sure when but I will let you know

Me:okay, take all the time you need to spend with your mother, it's the festive season after all

Thali: I love you

Me:(smiling) I love you more

We spoke a bit and she bid me goodnight and I woke up feeling a whole better and went to take a shower

I put on my casual clothes and took my keys and headed to the club, Sundays of the festive seasons are always packed

I drove there and Seth texted me saying hes coming, good I won't be bored...

To be continued, don't forget to drop the comment so that I will know what you think of this one

♥

[2/10, 12:22] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 39

-----Nomgqibelo Groetbroom -----

Yesterday was one of those days where by I get to sit around the house and do my knitting, it is what I keep myself busy and alive with since my husband went AWOL. I'm actually happy that he is keeping his distance, him and the sob too since they were starting to suffocate me really.

As I was still busy with the work I heard a car pulling over outside, I peeped through the window, it's was one of those expensive cars, Audi A3, and my daughter came out from it, she was on a long white sleeveless dress and she looked so beautiful

I couldn't believe my eyes when she walked in through the door, nobody moved nor said anything to each other, we just stood there up until she ran to me and I hugged her..she sobbed on my arms for quite a long time

It was a very emotional reunion but after that we sat down and made tea and spoke about basics, now we were just eating breakfast in silence, there was an elephant in the room that needed to be addressed..

Me: Thali

She looked up at me..

Me': thanks for coming, awazi ndivuya njani kukubona apha (I'm so happy to see you here)

Thali: mama..tell me something, why did you choose him over me? Why you didn't protect me?

Me:(sigh) my daughter I know that I failed you..big time..and I'm not going to lie to you, it was desperation to have a man and be loved after your father pulled a runner from me, when Majola showed up, he loved me too much and loved you too..it was so hard to believe that he was going to turn and do that

However I should have protected you and believed you..I'm sorry my daughter I know that can't undo the damage

Thali:(wiping her tears) yes it's can't..I've been a victim of rape since..at some point sold my body for survival..mom it was hard .

Me:(taking her hand) I can imagine my dear..but I want us to start afresh, I want to be a mother to you again. I'm glad to see you so strong and standing..ufuze umama wakho

She smiled a bit and that warmed my heart..my daughter has always had a beautiful heart

Me: Thali now that you are about to be a mother I need you to not repeat the mistakes I did with you, I want you to be selfish when it's comes to your kid's happiness,chose them over anything anytime..

Thali: that's exactly what I'm trying to do

Me:(rubbing her hand) I'm proud of you .look at how well you have done for yourself?

So tell me about your life and how things has been ?

Thali: oh mama this year has been hella dramatic yooh

Me: tell me I want to hear it all

Thali: okay let me clear these dishes I will fill you in

Me: okay

-----TONY -----

It's been a week now since Thali has left to her maternal home, we speak everyday and she sounds happy, we do video calls and face time,shes glowing and my baby now is growing, full five months

Just 4 more months to go and I will be a father, we decided not to check on the gender of the baby so that it's could be a surprise for us

I was just eating my lunch when the kitchen door opened and Kim walked in, I must say I last saw her when Thali was around, she looks good by the way, she's really cleaning up and it's working for her

Kim: hey

Me: hey you..how's festive season treating you?

Kim:argh it's good hey, remember Beverly my cousin?

Me: yeah the troublesome one

Kim:(laughing) don't let her hear you say that..well she's around and she's bomb

Me: wow I should pop by sometime and greet hey...we used to get along

Kim: you should, she will love that..so are you alone?

Me: yep as you can see

Kim: I was hoping Thali is back you know..I need someone's contact from her

Me:(smiling) let me guess, Busani right?

Kim:(hiding her eyes) please don't judge me, I like the guy. He's hot..

Me: (laughing) I'm not judging, and you are right,he's hot

Kim : right? So why don't you go and visit your brothers?

Me: nah I don't want to impose hey so its cool

Kim: okay so what are you having here?

Me: I haven't bought any groceries since Thali left, cooking alone sucks

Kim: Thali won't like this, coming back to her man skinny..let me see what I can make you

Me:you cook? Wow that's a first

Kim: shut up!just because I don't like cooking doesn't mean I don't know how

Me':(raising my hand to surrender) okay I will be here watching just to make sure the ingredients don't send me to the hospital

She hit me with the dish cloth and I jumped up laughing, she takes out pots and start cooking...

-----KIM -----

I was on my bedroom looking at the pictures Tony took of me cooking earlier, I must say they look so beautiful infact I look so damn sexy on a apron

Bev walks in with a bottle of wine and sit on my bed..

Bev: and then? Smiling like a retard on the phone what's up?

Me: I just had a great day

Bev:(sipping on her wine) do tell..

Me: so I went to check up on Thali earlier if she's back and found Tony alone and we cooked .

Bev: were you checking on Thali or Tony?

Me:(raising my eyebrow) come on Bev I was checking on Thali

Bev:(laughing) I don't know who are you fooling, if you were really checking on Thali you could have called and asked if she is back,you didn't have to go all the way down to her house..anyway..back to the cooking session with Tony .

Me:(smiling) it was amazing, it's reminded me back of those days when we started dating you know..Bev Tony and I still have that connection I tell you

Bev: Kim..don't do that..don't hurt yourself like that

Me:I'm not..Bev I've tried to move on, I'm trying but Everytime I think of him my heart beat faster, it's doesn't help that I see hi almost Everytime

Bev: so what are you going to do?

Me: I don't know but what I know is that I'm going to get my man back, and tomorrow he's coming for dinner

Bev : after everything that girl did for you? You are doing this to her?

Me: Bev I will forever be grateful for what Thali did for me, really. But she shouldn't have dated Tony at all cost, Tony was mine to begin with, so it's in my well interest to get him back

Bev: alright I was just saying, don't do anything stupid again

Me:oh no honey, this time around, Tony will be the one coming to knock up on my door, I just need to remind him what we had, besides this Thali girl is just a kid

Bev: mhmm madam, can we go get drunk?

Me:(getting up from my bed) I thought you weren't going to ask

We left the room going to the lounge

We really turned up I slept in the early hours of the morning and woke up with a terrible headache

Saints didn't help by screaming at my ear and jumping up and down on me, I took my phone and recorded a video of saints troubling me and sent it to her dad

He called almost immediately, he was laughing..

Me : it's so glad to know that you are finding this abuse from your daughter so funny

Tony:(laughing) I'm sorry but it's so funny..where's she?

Me: in my closet, fitting my shoes

Tony: ncooh I remember this other time she wore your heels and tripped on them..the drama she caused

Me:(chuckling) and I was the bad guy whereas she was the one stealing my shoes

Tony: hahaha I had to be on her side, I will see you guys later

Me: can't wait to see you

Tony:same here, give the princess the phone..

I called Saints and gave her the phone she spoke non stop I decided to go up and made my bed

I called Saints and went to take a shower,we played dress up with her messing my dressing table but it was so funny, I was capturing every moment

We went downstairs and joined the family over some breakfast

Today was the 16th of December and we were planning to braai during the afternoon

Bev and I hit the shops getting all the ingredients we were going to be needing later, because of the busyness of December we got back around 1:30pm and started setting up the stretch tent and other things

We invited few family members and friends, around 4 all was set, the food and drinks , deejay was also here

I went inside to freshen up and I put on my offshoulder jumpsuit with the zip at the back, I decided to put on sleepers since it was an indoors event

I went outside and people were already coming it was a beautiful weather ,I saw Tony's car pulling over.

He walked in carrying a bottle of wine and some chocolate, I walked to him and greeted

Me: you came

Tony: you invited me..looks like a great party

Me: you've made it in time, come in

Saints came running and went to her father and he picked her up and spinned her around

Bev appeared too on a bum short and a bra, she's flames this one, she's a coloured.

Bev:hey Tony T..long time

Tony: oh my word you've grown hey

Bev:argh stop it will you..look at you all hot

Tony:oh well

Me: let's take some snaps people before we get drunk

Bev: great idea

We posed for a picture with Saints too and they came out so gorgeous

Me: Tony you don't mind if I post these pictures?

Tony : nope

He disappeared somewhere with Bev and Saints and I sat down uploading them on my Instagram, Twitter and Facebook

I then stood up and went to join them, he was now talking to my mom

-----THALI-----


We had such a quite and beautiful day with my mom, Mlamuli came back home 3 days ago and it's still not so easy being around him but he's really trying and I've decided to give him another chance, only him and I that knows what happened to Majola and we decided to keep it from mom.

I was now laying on my bed after taking a long deserving bath, it's time to talk to Tony before I sleep, I last talk to him when we woke up and I miss him, I think after Christmas I will go back

I called him but his phone sent me to voicemail, weird, Tony's phone is never off nangelanga lomhlola

I sighed and decided to go on Instagram just to stalk celebs up untill I fall asleep,

Kim's updates popped up on my news feed, I sat up straight because I felt like my eyes were deceiving me

The first pic it was Kim, Tony, Saints and some woman she described as cousin, she captioned it like "family reunion 

I felt my baby kick harder than before, I did some breathings holding to my tummy

Me: breath Thali breath

I looked at the picture she uploaded few minutes ago, they were drunk, Kim placed her lips on Tony's cheek and he had his eyes closed, holding a glass with some alcohol

That picture fuel up things on me, I felt my whole body tremble, I tried to keep calm but I was feeling an unbearable pain on my back

I got up and drank some water and it's subsided,

I took my bag and throw in some of my clothes and change to track pants and I grabbed my keys going out

I met mlamuli on the lounge, he looked shocked to see me

Mlamuli:I thought you were sleeping, woohoo where are you going this late?

Me: to Joburg..

Mlamuli: whaat? Thali it's 8pm now..you will get there probably around 2 am

Me:it's fine but I'm leaving, don't wake my mom I will call her..

Mlamuli:okay fine if you insist on going then let me drive you, I can't you drive in this state no I can't

He grabbed my keys and we left the house, he started the car and I told him to drive faster,I kept on trying Tony every now and then .., Tony Roberts you better don't do anything that you would regret..

-----NARRATED -----

The party was so lit that it's ended around 2 am, Tony and the rest were kak drunk, Kim called an Uber and ride with Tony back to the house because he was not in a state to drive

When they got to his house, Kim told the driver to wait she want to make sure if Tony get to the house safe

She helped him walk up as he couldn't even walk properly, along the way up Tony was busy squeezing Kim's butt and kissing her neck

They finally got to the house and Kim opened getting in..the moment the door closed Tony jumped on Kim kissing.

Kim tried fighting it but the chemistry was too strong plus alcohol she gave in..Tony picked her up to his waist carefully not to drop her and went to the bedroom and threw her on the bed

He took off his shirt and his six pack drove Kim made she licked her lips, Tony pulled her to the bed and ripped the jumpsuit off her and they were all over each other kissing,

Tony stopped and went to the drawer and got a condom,he put it on and took Kim's legs to his shoulders and used his thumb to rub her clit and she moaned playing with her firm breasts,

Tony spread her legs wide and ate her pussy with her mouth she lost all sensed and moaned loud enjoying his warm tounge against her pussy

He then put in his hard rock dick on her wet pussy and he groaned as her vagina walls welcomed him, he began thrusting on a slow pace taking every thrust deep then he went harder Kim was screaming..Tony went for the kill

Tony : why did you cheat?

Kim: Tony baby..please..

Tony:(spanking her ass hard) was I not satisfying you?

Kim:(moaning with tears rolling Tony was in too deep) oh gosh baby take it easy..

-----MLAMULI -----

I've never drove so fast in my life, thank God it was at night and there were few cars on the road, only here in joburg that we bumped into few cars people' don't sleep this side

We got to their house around half past 2 and Thali got out running I followed in her footsteps, I still don't know what happened that made her to drive her immediately, I tried asking on the way she completely ignored me, she was busy making calls and clicking her tongue the whole way

We got to the house and I tried to stop her

Me: Thali wait..

Thali: I need to rest it's been a long journey, the guest bedroom is on your right going straight

She then went up and I went to get the bags from the car quickly, I don't trust this sight of hers, I've never seen her like that.

As I was closing the door putting the bags down, I saw her walking back slowly, she looked so pale and out of it,

I dropped the bags and ran up to her and caught her before she fell, I shook her up

Me: Thali, Thali wake up..don't do this..

Then right then I saw blood coming through her legs.. shit I got up really quickly and carried her to the car, as I was opening the door with my foot Tony came running behind me with his eyes all out and a towel wrapped around his waist

Then Kim appeared naked behind him, I put two and two together and figured what may have happened up there.. I put Thali down and gave him a hard punch, it didn't help that he was drunk he went flying to the floor and his hand came out with a blood from his nose

I kicked him and gave him another punch Kim screamed

Me: you ungrateful piece of shit! Pray nothing happens to her and the baby or else I'm coming after you

I clicked my tongue and charged to Thali, I saw Kim at the corner, I grabbed the vase and threw it at her, it's hit her arms as she was protecting her face

Me: you have always been a hoe..I hope you are happy now

I put Thali gently on the car and drove quick to the hospital and I shouted at the entrance nurses came rushing and helped her on the stretcher..the blood was too much and it was worrying me

I was pacing up and down anxiety killing me, the doctors kept running past me for the whole 30 minutes

I sat down and took out my cigarettes and lit it up smoking, I was beyond stressed, the security guy came to me

Security: ey mfethu you can't smoke in here..

Me: hey wena voetsek man vaya

I pushed him and he left shaking his head, I've never been so scared in my whole life, I said a silent prayer begging God to please not take her. We were just getting there ,she can't die now

I seriously can't understand this man, how can he do that to Thali? First time going home and he does this? Some men are really a disappointment ok

After a long time some doctor made my way to me, he looked too cheesy to be a doctor but what am I saying because all these doctors lately are cheese boys

Doctor: hi I'm Dr Busani Khoza and I'm looking for Thali's relative was told it's you?

Me: yes yes yes yes doctor it's me..I'm her brother..how is she?

Busani: very well then..urhm well she's stable now, we have managed to stabilize her, she's now resting

Me: thank you God, and how is the baby?

Busani:(looking sad) sadly the baby couldn't make it, the amount of shock her body received was too strong for the baby, judging her history of miscarriages and I looked at her file from Doctor Roberts it's not good...and I'm afraid in future she will have a problem to conceive...

He continued mumbling lot of medical words and I was lost on my own world..how can this happen?

Me: doctor, what was the gender of the baby?

Busani: it was a boy

I put my hands on my head and wiped my tears, this will kill Thali, I saw Tony walking in..he looks sober now..the punches I did on him were visible, I felt like kicking him right there

Tony:Busani?

Busani: Tony? Wow I was about to ask where you are because your girlfriend..

Tony: what are you doing here?

Busani: oh I've been called to help out, since you know December and it's drama..

Tony: so you are a doctor?

Busani: I'm many things Tony but yes, medicine is my speciality and first love, I have a practice in Cuba and I came home to rest from the patience up until a friend called me in to help

Sadly on my first night in, I bumped into your woman on a not so good condition..

Tony: yes I'm here for that, how is she?

Busani: I was telling his brother, she's stable but she lost the baby

I looked at them talking and I saw Tony blinking twice and he was down..I just stood there as this doctor panicked calling nurses to help him get him up..I wish he can faint and never wake up

I walked to Thali's ward..I closed the door carefully not to make noise and went to sit next to her

I took her hand to mind..her small hand,she looked so peaceful sleeping, I wished she can just sleep because what awaits her from waking up is too much

Me: I'm so sorry mntaneseKhaya..I really feel like this is my fault, I should have protected you somehow, maybe stopped you from going to the bedroom or something

This is my fault I'm sorry..

Kim:it's not your fault,if it's anyones who's at fault here its me..

I quickly turned out and she was standing by the door..the nerve of this bitch! What is she doing here?

I charged to her and placed my big hands on her throat suffocating all the air from her..she was kicking and screaming

I heard hands pulling me away from her as nurses quickly attended her

Me: get this bitch and her boyfriend out from her..I don't need to see the anywhere near my sister

Security: ndoda you need to calm down or you will be arrested

I just clicked my tongue and pushed him away

I turned and Thali was awake, tears were streaming down her face .

I rushed to her side..

Me: Thali..Tha..

She just kept quiet and looked at me with pained eyes..

Me: talk to me mntanesekhaya..talk to me Tha..

To be continued...

[2/10, 21:09] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 40

-----THALITHA-----

I don't know if I should call what's happening to me a bad luck or what, right now I don't have a right word to describe how am I feeling, the whole thing is just too much for me,

I want to scream so loud but then I don't have a voice.. Everytime I close my eyes the scenes of Tony groaning and fucking Kim during Dog style haunts me

I don't know but this time around I feel like maybe I deserve it, a part of me regrets letting things get this far, this time I have no one to blame but myself, I seriously hate everyone and everything around me, I just wish I could die

This pain is too much, yes I've had abortions, been raped but this..I've bonded with this kid so much, had plans, had hopes I was seriously looking forward to motherhood.

Mlamuli tried to talk but I seriously didn't have any voice on me, I just cried, I must have passed out because I woke up with a massive headache and Busani was busy writing something

I must say it's never crossed me that he was a doctor but then I never asked, I only saw him twice so yeah.

He looked to my direction and saw that I'm awake and came to me

Busani: hey, how are you feeling now?

Me: like I've been hit by a truck...

Busani: I will prescribe something for that. Thali I know that me and you doesn't know each other that much but I want to pass my condolences and say I'm sorry for everything, nobody deserves this

He just fueled me to cry even more, he put down his pad that he was using to write whatever and sat on my bed comforting me, I cried up until I had no voice

Busani: I will advise you to see someone, like to talking, it's really helps

Me: thanks

Busani: and you can talk to me if you are comfortable with that. doctor and patient confidentiality, I promise you

Me: (sigh)maybe I really do want to talk because right now I feel like I'm going to go crazy..

Busani: take a slow deep breath before you can talk..then begin

He handed me a glass of water and I did as instructed,I then told him how I met Kim and Tony, everything to our relationship has been till yesterday's incident, I told him everything that I did for Kim, everything..

He listened attentively and he didn't disturb me up until I was done..he then sighed and rubbed his face

Busani: yooh that's a lot hey..ok first things first I think you are a good person with a good heart and I believe that's the reason why you are here

Thalitha you are too forgiving and trusting, I'm going to be frank and straight forward, yes Kim and Tony betrayed you,but that's just the same way you did..Kim doesn't owe you any loyalty. yes you have bent your back covering and looking out for her but you did that on your own will she didn't ask you to do so.. sweetheart this world is cruel, If I were you I was going to cut ties with her the first time she threatened you.

You slept with her man and she kidnap you then again you keep her around as a friend what for?

This Tony guy as far as you have decribed him for me, I think he's a hyena on a sheep's clothing, let me tell you something, if a man cheats with you, believe me he will cheats on you someday

Now let me give you some piece of advice for free , take this as awakening call, it's ok to be kind and have a good heart but at the same time honey you need to be smart and selfish

Put yourself first before anyone else, that's has been the problem here, you put everyone's happiness above yours and you are still young to do that.

Another thing, deal with situations head on, like this Kim woman, knowing you, she will expect you to shoot her or anything like that, don't give her that satisfaction

Girl you are 19 to be 20 you still have a lot to achieve, a lot to learn, I understand this is your first heartbreak but don't let it to be your down fall, cry, get up and pick pieces of your life

I had my first heartbreak when I was 18 and I used it to my motivation, look at me today, I have more than one career

I swallowed hard and smiled, I guess it is what I needed to hear

Me: thank you so much Doc I feel a bit better now..can you please do me one more favor? I you need to call someone for me and let him know I'm here

Busani: no problem, who?

Me: Seth Roberts

I wrote down his numbers for him and he walked out calling him

After that the nurse came with my medication and food, the literally forced it down my throat just so that I can drink them pills

Mlamuli walked in with flowers and I smiled a bit

Mlamuli: you are looking a bit better, you gave me fright

Me: I'm sorry, I was just messed up at that time..

Mlamuli: I understand, look your mom has been calling..

Me: oh please don't tell her what happened, I will be going home after I've been discharged so I will tell her everything then..figure out some lie to tell her please

Mlamuli: okay then..so what are you going to do?

Me: I don't know, I will see after being discharged but what I know is that I'm going home I will come back probably February

Mlamuli: that's good, take some time off

Me: thank you for being there with me when all of this happened

Mlamuli: you don't have to mention it, you are my little sister,my duty is to protect you..

Me: and you really are trying, i appreciate that

We spoke a bit and I felt so drowsy and I went to sleep..

-----SETH-----

After receiving the phone call from some Dr Khoza about Thali being in the hospital I drove straight there..

See with Thali it's like she's my younger sister, I really like her and we are tight like that

I got to the hospital and looked for this doctor Khoza, who filled me what happened and I felt my blood getting boiled, I ran to her room

She was talking with that trash brother of hers, I hate this guy I still don't understand why Thali is still keeping him around..she's too kind hearted if you ask me

I greeted and he stood up giving us some space, judging from what I hear he's been here just for a day but she looked so horrible

I just say next to her and hugged her..she wrapped her Arms around me fully and cried, and my heart broke into pieces

Me:small please don't cry, you are breaking my heart..

Thali: it's hurts Seth a lot..

Me : I know, it's going to be alright. now tell me what happened?

She told me from how she saw Tony and Kim on Instagram, bitch blocked us I was going to shoot her before Thali makes it to Gauteng..I felt my blood boil some more..how can Tony do that? I know that sometimes he tend to be stubborn and the black sheep of the family, I mean he left a whole legacy and went to start his own thing with funds he got from our dad's enemies

What annoys me is how he preach about being righteous and Christianity..I'm so going to kill him

Me: I'm sorry to hear that baby girl..Tony is stupid,infact him and that bitch Kim deserves each other

Thali: as hurts to admit that,but I think you are right about that, it's time to leave them, close that chapter and pick up the pieces

Me: that's my girl right there..so what are you going to do?

Thali: can you please accompany me to Tony's house when I've been discharged to get my things? I don't trust myself around him alone, and i don't want another corpse on my name..

Me:you see with this corpse I can even defend you in court , help you to bury him where no one will find him

She cracked up and laughed and it was good seeing her laughing, that made me to relax a bit..

Thali: you are so crazy..but no seriously I'm just done with everything, next year I'm starting everything on a clean slate, I just need to apologise to Kim for sleeping with her man and falling pregnant, I mean if maybe I didn't fall pregnant, Tony and her would have sorted things out, maybe he stayed me with me because I was carrying his child,but now, I'm freeing him

Me: Small you are too calm about this and it's scaring me, you just lost your child, the love of your life cheated on you..come on..

Thali:(chuckling) that's true but then again I'm also not so all innocent in all of this, and it's doesn't really help to cry over some split milk. I believe that karma has served all of us

Me: so where are you going to live from now on?

Me: I don't know, I will look for places while I'm home..

Me:no need I will buy you a flat close to your studio and to varsity, before you refuse just know that this is not debatable, I'm doing it

Thali:(smiling) ok dad..

I hit her on her arm and she smiled..

Me:there's something I need to tell you..

Thali: okay,it's sounds serious..

Me: it is, so the time you were here after Kim pushed you I kinda put a tracker on you.. remember when you woke up to your wrists cut?

Thali: yeah? But how did you do that..

Me: with Brian's help..but that's not all, okay see me and my brothers we are kinda some under family cult, we have these animals live within us, I can turn right now to be a beast, Sean can be a Python, and Shawn a lizard

Thali:(eyes popped out) hai bo! I've seen these things on Nigerian movies do they really happen?

Me: yes they do..so these animals in us kinda protect us from any danger, they attack anyone harming us or those close to us, heee I remember when Shawn's wife was kidnapped by some prince, we arrived at the wedding and people jumped on tables seeing us,the snake was hissing on tables

Thali:(covering her mouth) oh my gosh! I would have fainted !

Me:(laughing) believe me you would have died, so I'm trying to say that when we discovered that you were pregnant we kinda initiated you to protect you from any harm, it's a tradition for all our women ,that should they fall pregnant we have to initiate them

Thali: wait, so are you trying to tell me that I have some sort of beast or snake in me?

I laughed so hard, the way she was so spooked right now!

Me: no marn you don't..But your child was going to be born with it, it's a tradition that every male child in the blood line inherits it

Thali: yooh hectic stuff!

Me: yeah so I will need to take you somewhere for cleansing since you lost the baby and give him a befitting burial

Thali: dude do what you have to do and let's change a subject you to are scaring me

I laughed at that.. people think witchcraft is a myth..well it's exist hey

-----TONY -----

TWO DAYS LATER

I was sleeping on the couch on my room , I must say the events of that day still haunts me, I don't know what really came over me

I wish I could reverse time and do things right, I haven't been to the hospital because I figured Thali need some space especially with her brother around.

Kim went home , she understands what I'm going through so yeah..

I've messed up badly, I've hurt Thali in a most cruel way, I don't even know where to begin apologising

The door opened and she walked in, Seth behind her

Immediately after our eyes met, he pushed Thali out of the way and gave me a hard punch that nearly broke my jaw, I hit back, I'm tired of people taking me for a punching bag, Thali screamed for us to stop

I must say she looks so better.

Seth:I wish you rot in hell, you are just an excuse of a man, after this,just know you don't have brothers, you can marry your hoe and live happily ever after and don't make a mistake of harassing Thali, she never deserved you anyway

He spat blood on the floor and walked out, it's hurts a lot to be fighting with my brother, the one that gets me and always on my corner

Thali looked at me with glass eyes, then her eyes wondered around

Me:(I tried touching her but she moved) baby..

Thali: don't!

Me: I'm sorry, I know I really don't have an excuse for what I did to you..but please believe me I never meant for any of this to happen..

Thali:(shaky breaking voice) save your apologies for someone who actually cares

I have free questions for you and you are going to answer me with nothing but honesty, you owe me that much

Me: okay ,I promise to answer you truthfully..

Thali:(wiping her tears with her hand) so tell me, did you use a condom?

Me: yes I did.. and baby this happened once, ..

Thali:(chuckling) so you had time to go get a condom but didn't have time to think about me? Meaning you actually planned this ! Because as far as I know we don't have condoms in this house, especially this room!

Me: baby please...

Thali:did you ever loved me?

Me: I did, I still do baby..

Thali: what about Kim? Do you love her?and don't you dare lie to me Tony, not after what you have put me through..

I sighed and rubbed my head in frustration, she was looking at me not blinking, truth of the matter is that I've always loved Kim, she's always been the one,I guess what attracted me to Thali is her streetwise smartass, but deep down it has always been Kim, I did love Thali too but not compared to how I love her.

Me: I also love her .

Thali:(chuckling bitterly) wow!!

She then went to the closet and grabbed the biggest luggage and started putting everything inside..

Me: baby I do love you too , believe me I do just that...

Thali: Tony shut up! You have said your piece, I'm done I'm leaving..

Me: you are not even going to give us a try to work things out?

Thali: why should I bother because you still love your baby mama? Fix things with her and I seriously can't be with a man who's a cause of my greatest loss..how do I continue being with you if everytime I'm going to be reminded of what you did to me?

She zipped her bag and dragged it to the floor, I followed her not knowing what to say..

Thali:I've forgiven you, you should also forgive yourself, I guess we were not meant to be, but I'm grateful for the little happiness you showed me for a while , I really thought it was going to last forever..I wish you nothing but the best in love, you were and will be forever my first love

She kissed me on my lips, the warmth of her lips mixed with tears, I kissed her back and she pulled out and placed a soft peck on my cheek

Thali: I will always love you but I'm setting you free..we are through

She pulled the bag outside and Seth looked at me with so much anger and disappointment

Seth: I don't want to waste more energy with you, I have taken Thali yesterday to the great waters for cleansing, that's where your son is buried at, go 10 km from the river , between the blue rocks, that's where your son is laid to rest..

He then left following Thali out, I. Just sank on the floor with a huge lump on my throat, regrets, fear and anger filled me .

-----BUSANI-----

Tomorrow it's Christmas day and my sister has invited me to join them with her man, step kids (Thando and Chad) and I said I will confirm today around 12 if I'm coming

I haven't heard from Thali since she got discharged, she texted me a day after saying she landed home safe. Since then her phone has been ringing unanswered and I'm worried about her

Yesterday I passed by her studio and something moved in me, she's one strong black woman, I hope she gets better from whatever she's going through, I still feel like she needs counseling. I've seen Tony and Kim with their daughter few days back doing some shopping,it's seem like he has moved on from this,so soon?wow!

Today it's a bit cold and I just finished having breakfast, good music is playing on radio, I try Thali again , and it's voicemail, now I'm worried..

I called the hospital and asked the nurse who was working with me that night to give me Mlamuli's numbers checking from the patient's file

I stood up to wash the plate when my phone vibrated, it was the nurse sending numbers,I thanked her and called the number immediately

Mlamuli: hello

Me: hi can I speak to Mlamuli?

Mlamuli:nguye othethayo(him speaking)

Me: oh great this is Doctor Khoza,I'm calling on a follow up to know how's Thalitha doing?

Mlamuli:(sigh) ei doctor it's not so good, this person doesn't eat, doesn't talk to anyone, she's always locking herself in her bedroom

My mom and I have tried so much to talk to her but we are no getting through her.. she keeps her curtains closed all the time, doesn't switch on lights, take days not bathing and now mom's is bathing her everyday ngenkani, and sometimes force her to eat

Me: that's not good , those are signs of depression, thank you for telling me this I will try to get there as soon as I can..

I will be booking her to therapy and please send me your location

Mlamuli: ok doctor I will

Me: Sharp

I hung up and went to my bedroom and head to my closet, I took few clothes and packed them together with some cash, it's so frustrating to be on ques this December so I'm always having cash with me, I took some few medication to help the situation with Thali..till we are back

I changed to denim jeans, black sneakers, white t-shirts and demin jacket

I took my phone to text my sister that I'm not coming and checked the location Mlamuli sent me, it's a plus or minus 6 hours drive

I locked my house setting on my alarms and took out my Mercedes Benz wagon and put it on the road .I love it because it's so fast...

Busiswe called me and I ignored it,I will call her later,I know she wants to scream at me for cancellation of the Christmas lunch invite..

-----Nomgqibelo-----

Me: marry Christmas in advance baby

That was me giving Thalitha a gift, she just took it and put it on bed

Thali: thank you, I will open it tomorrow

I sighed and sat next to her, it's hurts a lot that my daughter is slowly sinking into depression and there's nothing I can do about it.. I've tried everything, talking to her

Right now I'm leaving it to the hands of the Lord,I'm praying harder for my daughter to pull through from this. Since she came back she's been down , and her not eating has resulted in her being so skinny, losing weight quickly

Me: sthandwa Sam you need to let go now baby. Please do it for mama

Thali:(shaking her head) mama please, not today, I'm not in the mood for some of your sermon

Me: Thalitha I'm trying to

Thali: oh hai ke I'm out of here

She got up and left the house. I sighed and told Mlamuli to look after her, at least she's leaving the house for some air but she still needs to be watched..

I went to the kitchen to prepare some dinner, I cooked her favorite food hoping she will eat today.

As I was busy I head a car pulling over outside, I checked the time it was now close to 5pm, I looked through the window and wow,I've never seen such a beautiful car around here

The neighbors will bewitch me today! But then again what if it's that guy who caused my daughter all this heartache? I swear if it's him he won't leave this place alive

He knocked and I said come in..he walked in taking off his cap

Busani: sanibonani mama (greetings mother)

Me:(I knew by then it's not him, because I heard that he's a Nigerian) molo nyana ndiingakunceda ngantoni? (Greetings too son how can I help you with)

Busani: I'm Busani Khoza and I'm Thalitha's doctor from Gauteng, I've been trying to get hold of her the past few days with no luck, I called his brother this Morning who explained the situation to me and I decided to go and see for my own

Me:(sigh) oh ei my son it's bad, it's really bad, I don't know what to do now

Busani:eix mama I can understand, Thali need medical help, a serious one at that

Me: I wish I was working so that I can take her to those fancy places that you people attend, konje what do you call them?

Busani:(suppressing his laughter) therapy ma

Me: yes that..but ke I'm just a single woman with no job, but I trust in the Lord to come through for her

Busani: looks like your prayers have been heard, you don't have to worry about any bills , I will cover them..

Me: awu se sweet nje..can I make you something to drink? tea, coffee?

Busani: cold water will really do Mama

Me:ok son, sit down and tell me about yourself

Busani:(chuckling) yooh mama kungasa sithetha

I like this boy, his manners and sense of humor

We continued chatting while he filled me up how he first met my daughter and all that

Mlamuli and Thali came back, it's like they were arguing with something and they came at the back I'm sure they didn't see the car outside

Thali:(shouting) you really didn't have to follow me around,I'm not a child!

Mlamuli: I had to, it's not safe out there during these times.. mom asked me to

Thali: I should have known she's the one who put you to this. You guys are just suffocating me, you should just let me be marn

Me: Thali!

Thali:(screaming while going to her bedroom) whaaat!

Me: you have a visitor..

Thali: yoooh nah thixo what I have done? Tell whoever it is I'm not in the mood and I'm sleeping..

Busani: Thalitha,it's me..

She stopped right at her bedroom door and quickly turned around, her eyes met his and she ran up to him and he met her half way they hugged

I heard her sniffing then she broke the hug wiping her tears off

Thali: doctor Khoza, what are you doing on these streets?

Busani: your phone was off for days so I got worried and decided to come check up on you

Thali: you drove all the way here just to see me?

Busani: yes..

Thali: that's sweet, thank you (she wiped her tears some more, I left the room to give them some privacy to talk)

After sometime they joined us at the table. I was dishing up, her eyes were puffy red and swollen

She smiled when she looked at the plate..

Thali: you made my favorite! Thanks ma

Me:yes baby

I like this boy, it's not been long since he has been here but there's an improvement in Thali's mood

We ate while having normal conversation, Thali was quite only answered when Busani was asking her direct questions that forced her to participate

After dinner he gave her lots of tablets to drink, she complained but he forced her to drink them in front of us

He then bid us goodnight saying he has booked for his stay at the guest nearby

-----THALI-----

Busani really surprised me last night, I didn't expect him to come here and I really appreciate him being here, there was a time I really needed to talk to him since he was the first person I talked to but then I didn't have his number because I changed numbers to avoid endless apologies from Tony

The few people who had my new number was Seth whom I begged not to give them to Tony at all cost, then Thando and my mom plus Mlamuli

I woke up and decided to switch on my phone, there were lots of messages from my class mates and Seth

I decided to call him

Seth: finally! I know you said you need space but kid don't do this..

Me: I'm sorry broe.. Merry Christmas

Seth: merry Christmas kiddo..how are you doing?

Me: I'm going to be okay

Seth: I'm glad to hear that, when are you coming back?

Me:I think it's going to be soon than Feb because my doctor booked me for a therapy session on the 10th of January

Seth: alright call me as soon as you land ok?

Me: I will

Seth: Good and now keep your phone on always, you are depreome marn

I chuckled and hang up, I then decided to call Busani, he gave me his business card yesterday, his phone rang for a couple of times before he picked it up

Busani:hello and Merry Christmas

Me:(chuckling lightly) you are so modest..merry Christmas to you , you speaking to Thali

Busani: oh hey, my favorite patient..

Me:hai marn Busani..

Busani:(giggling) I'm joking, how are you?

Me: better, the pills you gave me really helped me to sleep hey.. like my first perfect sleep since I got here

Busani: that's great, now wake up, freshen up, and dress on your casual smart clothes I'm coming to get you for breakfast here at the guest house

Me: oh ok that's perfect, I wanted to go out vele so that I can get the family some presents

Busani: i will be there in 45 minutes

Me: okay, Busani..

Busani: yes.?

Me: thank you...

Busani:(silence, then a sigh) it's a pleasure..

I dropped and got up, I changed my bed to a complete new set, opened windows and tied up my room a bit

I took shower and wore my denim shorts, yes I love short things phela I have gorgeous legs and fresh tighs so yeah.lol I'm kidding

I wore my long white shirt that covered the short on my bums, I put on my Bathu sneakers and tied up my hair to a very neat bun

I applied some make you then head out..I bumped into my mom coming in..

Nomgqibelo: wuuh wow Thali Merry Christmas

Me:(hugging her) Merry Christmas mama

We went to the kitchen and smell of freshly baked cakes hit my nostrils I couldn't help but tasted few

Nomgqibelo:(smiling) you know I really like this Busani guy, he's really a good fine young man

Me: he's sweet yena mama, his arrival really lifted my spirit

Nomgqibelo: you don't have to say, if I knew that him was needed in order to get you back yourself I would have called him to come long ago

Me:(laughing) hai mama I drama! I'm not 100% ok mama but im just done mopping now

Nomgqibelo: that's my baby

Me: where's Mlamuli?

Nomgqibelo: I sent him to the shops for some ingredients

I saw Busani's car driving in and I took my bag and went out, I don't want him to get to the house because mom will keep him with her endless talks

We greeted each other and we drove to the guest house, did I mention how hot he looks right now? His cologne isn't doing any justice to me right now

We ordered the breakfast and my appetite was back I ordered the largest and Busani laughed at me when our order came back

We ate talking about random things, beside his serious appearance, he's crazy as fuck

Me: so tell me , why are you single? Or keng you gay or u are scared of girls?

Busani: me scared of girls or gay? Young lady respect me hey..

Me: what do you want me to say? I mean there's no way that a cute fine man like you can be single

Busani:(smiling) so you think I'm cute

Me:(blushing) don't dodge the topic..

Busani: well I have my yes set on someone but she's not ready yet..

Me: oh ok (I said rather disappointed I don't know why)

Busani: I'm done here and I'm so lazy right now..shall we go?

Me: yep let's go..

He stood up and we walked to his car and he opened the door for me and I got in..

We were driving around directing him to the mall when my phone beeped a notification from Facebook messenger

I opened it. It was Tony, he sent me a message with a new account since I blocked him everywhere

Message ; Merry Christmas Thalitha, I just wanted to let you know that you are on my mind always. I hope you are doing well and getting better

My whole mood changed. I was doing just fine untill now, maybe I shouldn't have switched on my phone

Busani realized I wasn't okay because my breathings were heavy, he parked aside on the road and rushed to my side and opened the door,he knelt before me and held my hand

Busani: calm down, I'm going to count to three and you will breath in and out.. okay?

Me: okay...


Busani: one..two..three..now breathe..good..do it again.. perfect..how are you feeling now?

Me: better..

Busani:you sure? We can still go back

Me:(shaking my head) no let's go to town.. please

Busani:(getting up) yes ma'am

To be continued, don't forget to comment 

[2/11, 15:47] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 41

THREE MONTHS LATER

----THALITHA-----

It's been three months now and I must say I am getting there , with the help of my family and the few friends that I have.

The whole situation has made me more stronger,I still attend my therapy sessions, when I began I used to go everyday but now I only go once a week, that how I've progressed

It has not been an easy journey at all, we in April now and there was a time when I bumped into Tony and Kim around February I wanted to die ,they look genuinely happy and u girl was wearing a ring, so I stalked Kim and discovered that she was engaged to be married in two weeks from now and also pregnant

I don't want to lie that kinda set me back, I had a screaming confrontation with Tony at the club and he said I was"embarrassing myself" imagine!

But after that my therapist told me to let it go and start on a clean slate, with that said, I decided to take a break from men and relationships and grow my career.

My studio has grown so much now and my clintele too, Busani has been good and we are so close than before

He once confessed having feelings for me but he is too sweet I think he deserves someone with less drama,less baggage than me,less damaged who will love him fully without Insecurities, I set you free and he didn't protest.

I learned the hard way from the situation with me a Tony, we were good as brother and sister, until we started screwing each other, so I dont want the history of the past to repeat itself.

Im good with Thando as a friend, Busisiwe is also friendly but we only see each other once in a while..

So Busani hooked up with Beverly two months back, and by the looks of things ,they are making each other happy of which makes me happy, Busani is a good guy, he deserves someone who will treat him good and happy..

Beverly is nothing like Kim, she's really kind hearted, her and Rachel has always had my back and supported me through and through

I miss my buddy Seth, he went back to the States with his wife and I must say it's boring, every girl need a male bestie like Seth to gossip with, Busani, well we do gossip sometimes but then he's my doctor at the same time so yeah

I was now driving to his house, his sister is around and I'm invited to some dinner, and im starving, Busisiwe is a mean cook, I thought I was killing the pots but yooh u girl is doing the things shame..

My mom was so disappointed that Busani and I didn't go down the road of dating but I can't blame her. Busani is every woman's son in law dream shame.

Mlamuli has turned his life around and I'm super proud of him, Busani put in a good word for him in one of his business partners and he is the driver at some company and things are going well for him, and our relationship is really growing daily.

I arrived at the house and parked my car, I have the keys and code to this place even my own bedroom in this house...levels lol

As I was approaching I heard noise and loud laughter in the house, I opened the door and Busi was cooking with Bev who has her glass of wine on her hand..this girl and her wine, insperable..

Me:ladies

Bev:(running to hug me) hey baby

Busi: you made it at long last

Me: I had to,Bev I didn't know you were here I was going to bring you your bottle of wine

Bev:(raising her glass) Busani sorted me out honey

I just laughed and went out to look for him at his study

I knocked and came through

Me: hey you

Busani: hey Thali, how are you?

He stood up from his desk and hugged me

Me: I'm good, I just wanted to greet I will be joining the ladies at the kitchen

Busani: okay I'm glad you made it

I smiled and went back to the kitchen, I washed my hands and started helping around..well I was the only one not drinking because I was still on treatment, Antidepressants so yeah had to be sober for at least 6 months

We finished up and dished out while Bev went to call on Busani, I was starving and they were taking so damn long, finally they came smiling and I knew they were having sex.. addicts!

Busiwe said grace and we digged in , we were chatting laughing when the door opened and a yummy Human being walked in

Busani is hot but this right In front of us was hotter, he had those fuck boys cut on his hair, tattoos almost covering his whole body, I mean his arms to his neck, yeah just like Chris Brown, he has cute eyes, tall and a bit caramel

Guy': hey family!

He screamed at the door and Busi jumped running to him..

Busani just smiled and whispered to us..

Busani: that's my father's son from his marriage, Sbusiso Khoza, he's the last born and lives in California.

Wow I remember Busani telling me that he has a brother who doesn't live here, apparently this guy is the well known fashion designer, his designs are to die for, branded as "SK" he just recently launched a lingerie line in New York, he really does the things shame

Busi:my baby brother,look at you all grown.. welcome home

Sbusiso:thanks sis, feels good to be home,brother, hey hunnies

He referred to us and Bev, we just flashed smiles at him..

Busani:(he stood up and hugged his brother with pants on his ass, sneakers) welcome home Mkhathini

This is my woman Bev and this is a family friend, Thalitha

Sbusiso:(he took my hand and kissed it) hey mummy, I'm Sbusiso Khoza, the handsome one

Busiwe laughed loud yanking his hand from me

Busi: leave the kid alone, Thali mind this one he's a player and a heart breaker don't entertain him

I just blushed the way he said it, it was just so sexy, Sbusiso gave Busi a middle finger and sat down taking Busani's plate and ate from it

Busani:so what are you doing here?

Sbusiso: just visiting the family, I missed you guys and your father summoned me..

Busi: oh oh.. trouble ooh (she said it in a Nigerian accent and we laughed)

Sbusiso: I hope not , im a very busy man so I managed to get a week a way to come and here what is it that he wants from me

Bev and I cleared the table to give the siblings some chance to catch up

Bev: what's up with the Khoza men and their cute self

Me: girl I was about to ask!

Bev: and I read online that he recently split with his long time girlfriend..

Me: okay okay Bev I see what you are trying to do and it's won't work

She just laughed and we finished up. I then went to tell them that I was leaving back to my apartment, Busisiwe insisted that I spent a night since it was late

Well I agreed, Bev and I went to my bedroom and she changed my nails to new ones..

-----SBUSISO KHOZA-----

As you have heard, I'm the youngest and the most gorgeous one at the Khozas, haha im kidding but yeah I'm handsome.

I'm 25 years old and so far I've really did well for myself I'm happy. Growing up I loved dressing well and looking all good, that by the time I did matric I knew that after that I want to go to designs

But my dad wasn't so pleased, in fact he trashed my career choice saying ayikho nje indoda e straight yaka Khoza that makes clothes..how insulting!

He wanted me to be a lawyer since Busani has already chose medicine and I stood my ground and said hell no

Busani and Busi supported my career choice, but my parents, weren't so pleased, my mom was worse, she even said that most designers are gays like nje yooh it was depressing

But I pushed through just to prove a point, luckily for me I got a bursary and went to study in California where I'm based now, I left home when I was 20 after full two years of being home trying to raise funds and applying

My dad didn't want to fund my studies , when I moved to California my brother had started working he helped me with accommodation and food, since he was in Cuba we would visit each other more often

He then started other businesses on the side other than medicine and they did well, he invested a lot on my fashion business and shows,

My first show was a disaster, my father couldn't wait to rub it in my face how much of a loser and embarrassment I was, but thanks to my siblings they told me to get up, I did and my second show was so much better, Busi called in favor from her media friends and I had my break

Since then SK designs are the demand, and now I've recently launched my lingerie line and it's going off the shelves..I now own a huge factory of which Busani also has shares into

Me and my father you can say that we don't see eye to eye, he has never believed in me or anything like that, I always had to work twice as hard to impress him, he always compared me with Busani, as much as that hurt me for a long time but it's has never came between our brotherhood love..he has my back and I have his, I wouldn't think twice to kill for him

So reason why I'm here ,I have been told that my father is sick, dying actually so he want to see me, surprisingly Busani doesn't know anything about that so I wonder what this old man is on about..

Apart from clothes, I love beautiful women, they actually inspire me to create those beautiful dresses, swim wears, lingerie and so on

I love my weed, music ,hip hop specific and food..I'm a very simple person who's just obsessed about success and being happy

I'm currently single, I broke up with my 3 years girlfriend after I caught her in bed with my manager two months back, I fired him and hired a female manager and broke up with the bitch

It's did hurt me because she was my best friend but arh I decided to let it go because yes I'm not straight up too but I've always respected her, she never caught me or my shit never affected her

So for her to be caught simply meant that she wanted me to see that she was screwing my guy so yeah

Being with my siblings tonight is bliss, I've missed them , especially my sister marn.

I see Busani is growing now, trying to be stable, that's nice..and the other mummy, damn this girl is fire, but Busani is so overprotective of her so is Busi, I wonder what's the story there

But I will find out some other time, now I need to rest so that tomorrow I can go see that old man called my father and I'm so not looking forward to it...

-----KIM-----

I must say this year is definitely my good year, after the whole incident with Thali, Tony and I sat down to talk

We really ironed out everything and decided to give our relationship a go, it has not been easy ,our families judged us but finally they came around and accepted that we love each other and belong together

By God's grace I returned to work because I'm really good at what I do, Tony bought us a new house as fresh start from everything..

I must say he's really trying and I'm happy, we are getting married in two weeks and I'm so happy, with our family expanding this is exactly where I want to be for the rest of my life ..

When I found out that I was pregnant 2 months back I was so delighted, I've seen Thali once and it was so awkward but she didn't create any drama

With two weeks away from the wedding, my feelings were all over the place making sure that all runs well and there are no glitches

Tony's phone rang from the kitchen counter and I looked at it, it was a number that was unsaved, he then appeared from the bedroom and took it answering it going outside, I just felt some how

I looked at him through the window and he was smiling and blushing,I felt some jealousy kicking in but I brushed it off

He came back and watched TV with Saint's on his lap.

Me:so love tomorrow I will be going home up until the wedding..

Tony: oh yes, remember to give you the money you asked for..

Me: okay baby I will

Then silence passed us, his phone beeped and he looked at it,I saw a smile on his face..

Me:love..

Tony:yes baby..

Me: you wouldn't chat on me again right?

Tony:(raising his eyebrow) where is that coming from now?

Me:I don't know I just feel like there another woman...

Tony:yooh Kim you and your insecurities, when are they going to end?

I just looked down playing with my fingers, he threw me his phone and the message that just came was the same number that called him earlier, I read up and they were talking about my car that was bought overseas, he was planning on gifting me on our wedding day.. shit..ive ruined everything!

Me: baby I'm sorry..

Tony: maybe we should call off the wedding and deal with our issues..

Me: whaaat?no baby we can't.. not after all the preparations .

Tony: what's the use of us getting married if we don't trust each other? Kim I'm trying to be a better man for us, for you but that's just not enough for you,you don't hear me throwing your past at your face every now and then.. but you (he shook his head and got up)

Me: baby please let's talk about this

He grabbed his phone and his car keys

Tony:I'm going to the office for some fresh air, you can call the receptionist after an hour to confirm if I'm there and I will do video call

My heart sank,I held his hand..

Me: love I'm sorry, I know you are a good marn baby please forgive me, my insecurities are fueled up by my hormones love please..I will try to do better..

Tony:okay I hear you but I'm still going out... Saint's let's go baby

I let him be and he walked away,I threw myself on the couch and hugged the pillow and tears rolled down...

To be continued,a bonus insert , just because I love y'all but don't get used to it and start demanding two inserts per day because it shall not happen

Enjoy💕💕

[2/12, 08:36] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 42

-----SBUSISO KHOZA----

I slept very late last night, I guess the stress of not knowing what could be the reason why my father wants me home and smoking weed late is the reason.

I ended up scratching few designs on my notepad until I felt asleep, and now I'm up it's still 5:30 am and I'm feeling like shit

I got up, open windows and put on my jogging pants and sneakers and went out

Now I can get a chance to see that Busani's house is the bomb, he really invested good here, maybe nani one day when I decide to relocate and come home I will buy a house like this, but I don't think I will come home, my life on the other side is good and busy

I got out and jogged around admiring the neighborhood, beautiful and classic, around 7 I was back and all sweaty, I got in the kitchen and went to grab a bottled water from the fridge, a painting hanged up on the wall caught my attention, I started at it for quite a long time

Thali: good morning.

She said getting in the kitchen all dressed and cleaned up, this girl yooh

Me: hey mornings, why you up so early?

Thali: I need to get home, change and head to work

Me: oh I see, I was hoping maybe I was going to see more of you and get to know you a bit?.

Thali: that won't be a problem, come by the studio when you get a chance

Me: studio?

Thali:(smiling and grabbing her handbag walking out) yep, that painting you are staring at , was painted by me, so is the other ones in the house. Have a great day Mr Khoza

She walked out and I was trying to process what she said..wait is she an artist? Damn if what she says is true then she's hell a talented

I walked to the bedroom and bumped into another on the passage, I checked the signature at the bottom it was signed as " T, Groetboom " in small italics

Wow I was so impressed, I definitely need to visit this studio and see more of her work, this girl is an international level, I mean one show exhibit in New York she can be a millionaire.

I took a shower and dressed up on my white skinny jeans, black sneakers, my black vest and a denim jacket

I just applied styling jelly on my hair to keep it gloomy and nice and took out necessary things and head out

I found Busani and Busi having breakfast, I wonder where's the madam

Me: family

Them: hey broe

Busiswe: you woke up early?

Me: yeah I need to go see your father while it's still early and hear what he wants

Busani: he's still your father too

Me: yeah well.

I grabbed a plate and dished up some and started eating, we spoke about few things and Busi stood up saying she got to run and kissed both our cheeks

Busani: Sbusiso I know that you and Dad are not as tight like that but please, he loves you

Me:(chuckling) yeah sure he does, and he has a funny way of showing it..

Busani: Sbusiso..

Me: you know he didn't even showed up on my graduation,my launch..

Busani: give him time..

Me: ai actually let's not talk about that guy, he's draining my energy,let's talk about more interesting things

Busani: okay...like what?

Me: your family friend..that Thali girl

Busani:(shaking his head no) ah ah Sbusiso you are going to leave that girl alone, she's been through a lot

Me:(smiling) why are you so protective of her?

Busani: because I know it all of what she's been through, I'm her doctor and friend...

Me: you like her don't you?

Busani:that's not the point, the point here is that don't lead her on knowing you don't have any intentions of keeping her..

Me:(rolling my eyes) there's no harm in having fun, you are the master of that

Busani: yes, have fun with anyone else you want to but give her some break..she's just finding her ground and putting pieces of her life

Me:(I looked at him deep and I saw the sincerity in his eyes) okay I hear you, so she told me she's the one behind these beautiful potraits hanging around?

Busani: true , she has a studio across the road..

Me: wow, I should visit it before I go back to New York

Anyway let me go see your father, can you please borrow me one of your cars?

Busani: kanti ufike ngani izolo Lana?

Me: I Uber'b up

Busani:(throwing up the keys of the jeep to me) bring it in one piece

Me:thanks broe

I head out leaving him eating his breakfast..

I got on his Marron Jeep and damn it's so beautiful and clean, I connected my phone to the Bluetooth and started rapping around lil Wayne, this car iyavuma, even the sound nje

I drove an hour and I was parking outside my father's house at Kempton park suburbs

I got out and walked to the door , I knocked and got in, my mom was washing dishes, when she saw me she ran to me and hugged me

I might be all mad at them but not my mama, I know that she takes everything her husband says but deep down she's a good woman, she managed to love , Busani and Busisiwe as her children

Mom : my baby, you home

Me: you summoned me home mom..how are you guys

Mom: siyaphila ndodana, I'm so happy to see you , sit down let me make you some tea and the cake I baked this morning, it's like I knew you were coming

Me: thanks Mom

My mom is really a great cooker and Baker, she runs her successful bakery in town

Me: where's your husband?

Mom: taking a bath he will soon show up

Me: okay

We then started speaking about my work, she really showed interest in what I do, judging from her genuine tone, she was really happy for me and that melted my heart, maybe I should make her a dress or something

Then my dad appeared with that strong persona of his .

Mr Khoza: Sbusiso

Me: yes dad

Mr Khoza: come let's talk

He said turning back and I stood up following him to his study. We sat down and he poured us whiskey and gave one to me

Mr Khoza: so how are you?

Me: I'm okay , I can ask you since you are sick

He chuckled and down his drink.. this man is 100% fine nje

Mr Khoza: son I'm good as you can see me, I just said that to get you home because I knew it was going to be a struggle getting you here

My son I just wanted to apologise for how I treated you before, I sidelined you, put you under pressure and you still came up top. I can say it without any doubt that you are hustler like a true Khoza and I'm happy for you. I mean you have made a name for yourself out there in a different platform, putting the Khoza name across the country, I couldn't be happier, I'm sorry for not being involved from the beginning and not giving you the support you needed, I was selfish and somehow scared that this might not be a successful career but you prove me wrong.. everywhere I see someone wearing your designs of which is rare because uyadura I feel proud, and last month your mom and I were watching your show being broadcasted on TV in New York and we saw you walking in and I screamed" that's my son"

Wow now that is what I wasn't expecting but it made me happy, I've always wanted to hear those words , it's doesn't matter that I'm only hearing them after five years but it's seriously what I've always wanted to hear and I couldn't be more happier..

I just looked down trying to contain tears, dad stood up and came to me, he patted me on my shoulder and pulled me up and gave me a hug..

Me:(teary) thank you Dad, you have no idea how much those words mean to me

Mr Khoza: I'm proud of you Hlase, one day I will surprise you and come to your live show

Me:(smiling) I would love that..

We sat down and I felt like a huge weight has been lifted from my shoulders

Mr Khoza: so how are your siblings?

Me: they are good just busy..

Mr Khoza: that's good, so now tell me more about your work..

I smiled, now I truly believe that there's God,...

-----BEV-----

I left Busani's house to my apartment a bit earlier because I needed to be at work.

I am secondary school teacher and it's my passion, I love teaching a lot, passing education to those kids and listening to them when troubled is touching, teaching is a calling and a passion

I walked to my apartment and as I was trying to open I realized that it wasn't locked, weird, because I know I locked the door when I left yesterday afternoon

I pushed the door opened and my tv was playing, suddenly my heart beated faster..what if there's a thug in here..

Just as I was turning to grab a knife I bumped into someone's hard chest and I screamed..

Voice: good morning baby

My heart nearly came out from my mouth,I opened my eyes and Jason was standing in front of me..

Me: Ja.. Jason?

Jason:(caressing my face) in the flesh baby

Me: ho...how? And when did you get out.?

Jason: I will answer all your questions later baby but now can I have some quality time with my woman?
It's been so long baby and you stopped visiting two months ago..I've missed you so much

He ran his tongue on my neck and the back of my earlobes I shivered, Jason knows what is my weakness and he knows very well how betraying my body is when comes to his touch

His big hand squeezed my butt under the short dress I was wearing, thank God I've showered when I left Busani's house,he was biting my ear and neck while his other hand was playing with my boob, a moan escaped my mouth,

He then attacked my lips and gosh I felt a river between my legs, my body knows his touch and it's responding well to it..

He ribbed my dress off and I wasn't wearing a bra, he cursed

Jason:damn baby

His obsession with my boobs , he sucked them hard and picked me up to the couch, he put me on the edge of it and spread my legs apart, kneeling in front of me having them on his shoulders and he ate my pussy

Guilty washed me when I thought Busani was fucking me few hours ago but hey .

He ate me up that I came hard on his mouth, he got up and kissed me making me to taste myself from his lips, he took off his jeans and his dick sprung out free, gosh he's still big and thick

I played with it with my hand and he looked at me grabbing my head to suck him, he pressed him hard on my mouth while groaning, I had to gag on it

As he was about to come he pushed and picked me up to his waist, I'm size 34 but he lifted me up like I'm 28, that how big and strong he is, he directed his hard erect cock to my wet vagina and moaned as my vagina stretched to accommodate him..he moaned biting my shoulder

Jason: shit baby , my home

He then fucked me hard while on his arms and I lost all senses and screamed picking up his pace...

-----THALI-----

It's been two days since I went to Busani's house and met his cute brother, today it's Wednesday and it's kinda busy, I've hired two assistants to help me out a bit

I was in deep doing a personal painting, this one isn't going to be sold or anything like that, it's a gift, to someone close to my heart

It was a portrait of Busani and I hope he will like it, Sbusiso walked in and the ladies I work with drool, I was too late to cover it because he saw it and smiled

Sbusiso: wow.. such a beautiful painting..

Me: thanks but Sbusiso don't tell your brother I beg

Sbusiso: my lips are sealed I promise

Me: good, so how did it go with your dad?

Sbusiso: went well, well than I expected hey

Me: thats good to hear

Sbusiso: you are really talented, one day you should come with me to New York so that we can show off your work..

Me:(excited) really?

Sbusiso:yes really,phela New York is where dreams are realised baby

I I just blushed, he's right though

Sbusiso: can I also paint?

Me:in those clothes? I don't think so

He took out his jacket and pants,he was left with his vest and bvd

He's sexy but not like Busani, that one, yuuh his chest and arms, he took a clean pad and we started painting together, it was fun

Sbusiso: so tell me , what is the story between you and my brother?

Me: we are friends

Sbusiso: yeah right...

Me:(hitting him)I'm serious!

Sbusiso: you do realize that my brother has feelings for you? I mean like hard and real feels for you?.

I kept quiet and looked away, he confessed it but I ignored it

Me: we can't be together Sbusiso,I'm not good for him..

Sbusiso: yeah well I know you will tell me how damaged you think you are. We had this conversation with him yesterday and believe me he loves you, and stop selling yourself short, Busani isn't an angel too, he has his past , as long as you two love each other and make each other happy

Me:. But he's with Beverly..

Sbusiso:forget about that nonsense, there's nothing there believe me, and I can tell you love him too, the painting I walked on you doing is the proof enough that you also love him

So I'm saying to you right now stop selling yourself short and go get your man..

I thought for a while and smiled, I removed the apron I wore to protect my clothes, washed my hands and grabbed my bag

Sbusiso:and now? Where are we going because we are still painting?

Me:I'm going to get my man..

Sbusiso:(clapping hands) yes girl!that's the spirit! Go get your man

Sbusiso is crazy but I think I've scored myself another bestie in him

I knew Busani was home because he said so when we were talking earlier in the morning

I drove in a speed and ran to the house, he looked at me shocked when I was breathing heavily in front of him

Busani: Thalitha wangena sogijima nje who's chasing you?

Me:(catching my breath) no one is chasing me, I just need to talk to you about something..

Busani: okay sit down let's talk then

Me:(shaking my head) no I'm good standing

He folded his hands and looked at me, shit this is harder than I thought..I swallowed hard and spoke calmly as possible

Me': Busani you are good guy and honestly I can't continue doing this anymore..

Busani: doing what?

Me: this friendship thing, I can't..I don't want to be your friend anymore..

Busani:(frowning) why? What happened? Did I do something wrong?

I made my way to him and put my finger to his mouth..

Me: you didn't do anything, I want to be your girlfriend

The frown quickly changed to a smirk then his lips Rose to a smile he grabbed me fast and kissed me hard... Damn his lips were hot and he was such a damn good kisser

Busani: wow..I thought you were never going to ask..I will be so honored to be your boyfriend..

Me: I'm glad, but we need to address something...

Busani:(shaking his head nodding) I know, Beverly, I will sort it out soon, infact today, I haven't seen her since you set your foot here

Me: I hope she disappeared for good because i am here to stay..

Busani:(smiling beautifully) I love you Makhoza

Me:(blushing I'm sure my cheeks were red now) I love you too Khoza..

He picked me up and placed me on the table and kissed me, our tongues were dancing in each other's throats when we felt someone clearing their throats, we turned and it was Busisiwe standing there grinning

Busiswe: I knew you two belonged together, congratulations guys

She came and hugged us, I just blushed,I didn't know what to say..

-----BEV-----

Since Jason got back we have been having sex non stop and my pussy is swollen now, Jason is my long term boyfriend, he has been in jail for 5 years,I was starting to give up on him coming out

The past two days we spoke about everything and I confessed seeing someone the past two months while he was in prison and luckily for me he took it better than I thought, but told me to end things with him because he doesn't like Sharing

We were cuddling on the couch watching a movie when we heard a knock..I got up wearing his shirt and went to get the door, to my surprise it was Busani

He looked at me from head to toe and shook his head

Busani: hello

Me: Busani

Busani: can we talk?

Me: yeah sure

I closed the door and went to stand by the balcony

Busani: you just disappeared and you don't answer my calls what is wrong?

Me:I'm sorry I've been meaning to come and talk to you but I've been busy

Busani: I see and now I've made things easier for you , I'm here. Speak up

Me: I don't know how to say this , but Jason is back and..

I've told him about Jason before we started dating, he just sighed in relief and smiled

Busani: I understand, our thing was a no strings attached right?

Me:(shocked)right

Busani: well I'm happy for you and it's cool, we had fun while it's lasted, I will stay away from you

Me: thanks

He then left, I still don't understand why he looked so relieved, what's up there? Anyway I went back inside and cuddled up with Jason, he kissed my forehead

Me: it's done, I broke up with him

Jason: good girl...now it's me and you..

-----SBUSISO -----

We were chilling at the table with the family and I must say it was awesome, it was me, Busi , the love birds bagonene

Me: so you guys are telling me that Tony did all of this to our girl and he's moving on getting married?

Thali: yep, I guess they belong to each other

Busiswe: belong to each other yamasimba..Thali we are gate-crashing that stupid wedding

Busani: Busisiwe no..

Me:that's actually a good idea Busi ,I will create your dresses I want you guys to steal a show there

Busi:how about we go with you Mr designer? I mean the media will loose it seeing the California star in South Africa and believe me, Kim and the husband will be history

I actually love this idea, since we can't kill them, how about we ruin their special day?

Me: I love you, we are doing this!

The three of us high fived, Busani shook his head laughing

Busani: Sbusiso when are you going back? You such a corrupt

Me: I will go back after this weekend, I've got a wedding to attend

So girls let's discuss your dresses...

Busi: yes please, I want something that will show off my beautiful cleavage and some tigh.. should be royal blue to Navy so

Me:(writing down) noted, and you Thali..

Thali: mmmm let me think, something long, covering my ass tight, revealing my back, a slit too to show off my gorgeous long legs it's should be cream white, with some bling on the chest you know

Me:cheesa girl, I'm sure the groom would stutter on his vows , laughter filled the whole house

Busani: on second thought,I'm coming with you guys to the wedding


Thali:(smiling) I thought you were not coming?

Busani:I've changed my mind

He baby kissed her as she grinned

Me: okay okay there are kids in the room hai bo!

We laughed and Busi went to get us another bottle of wine., Busani wasn't drinking today, supporting his girlfriend that's on treatment..these two are cute, I wish I find someone like this too..

To be continued, don't forget to comment 

[2/12, 15:18] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 43

-----THALITHA----

It was the wedding day, thank God the weather was beautiful and everything nje was sassy

My team and I were ready, we decided not to cause any scene just to witness the love of my life say I do to his love of his life.. funny I know

Well Busani is not coming he was called for some emergency at Cape Town so it's going to be me and Sbu

I must say Sbu outdone himself,these designs are to die for,I look like the one getting married and Busi is my bridesmaid

I was doing finally touch on my make up when the door opened and Sbu walked in,we were matching, I was on creamy white dress and he was on gold and cream white suit, classic, classic, he renewed his trim and now I agree, really he's the cutest ka Khoza..

Sbu: oh wow look at that,madam you are so hot

I giggled and turned around I was flames,he took my arm to his and we walked out and met Busi who was dancing to Lindough's song " ladies house" , u girl was doing I vosho in heels,Busi is life marn

She gasped when she saw us, took her phone and took few snaps, we got to the hired limo by Sbu and there was some champagne and all the snacks, I decided to have few glasses,I've been sober for long now

We arrived and it was quite outside, it was packed, knowing how big the Roberts family were

We walked inside just when the pastor was asking if there was anyone who wanted to stop the wedding, when that door opened everyone turned to look at us,I saw Kim biting her lips, she really looked so gorgeous, Tony wiped the sweat on his forehead and Seth winked at me I laughed a little

We walked and sat on the third row from the front,all eyes on us I tell you and we were so serious, Busisiwe chewing her bubble gum loud busy pressing her phone

The pastor proceeded with the service and they exchanged their vows, Tony was stuttering and Kim was getting frustrated I laughed a little this was too much funny, finally they were done and walked out to take pictures outside, Sbu grabbed my hand and we walked out first with Busi following us .

Just as we were outside the media was there taking pictures and asking endless questions..

Journo: Mr Khoza, is this your woman?

Another journo: what Happened with Nicole?

Another journo: were the break up rumours true?

Another journo: is is safe that this is the future Mrs?

They were talking all at the same time and Sbusiso just smiled and looked at me who was so confused, he whispered in my ear

Sbu: just play along,nod, smile and don't say a word ok?

I shook my head and he kissed my cheek and we posted for few pictures then walked away, all the photographers were running after us but some guys in black suit were keeping them away from us, like Sbu and I stole the show, we outshine the wedding

We made it to the limo and Busi popped some champagne

Busi: yes team we did it, we made it! These two fools no one will be talking about their stupid wedding but about my brother here..

Me: (giggling) we are so evil guys..

Sbu was not laughing or talking anymore

Busi:and then?

Sbu: I need to get hold of Busani and let him know what happened, this wasnt part of the plan guys, my picture with Thali will be all over the world ..

Me: argh marn we all know the truth here so chill buddy, now let's celebrate

Sbu chuckled and we toasted our glasses driving away..

-----BUSANI -----

I was back in Cape Town and it's has been a long day, I took a shower and relaxed on my boxers,I took a remote and my phone sitting down in my room watching TV and boom on trending news it was Thali and my brother with matching outfits looking dazzling

The headline was about the famous designer coming home to find his wife..what the hell!

I took my phone and it was the same thing on the social media, people were going crazy at how gorgeous they are together how cute they're..like everyone was posting them..

I felt this jealousy In me kicked in hard, an incident that happened years back when the love of my life cheated on me with my best friend and went on to fall pregnant..

I poured another glass and my bedroom door opened, she walked still on that dress, looking so beautiful like never

Her eyes were puppy and sleepy, she threw her arms around me..

Thali: hey baby you are back, I missed you

Me: Thali you are drunk? Have you been drinking?

Thali: just a little bit..yooh baby today was flames , you missed out

Me:, I could tell,what nonsense is this?

I showed her the picture where Sbusiso is kissing her cheek and how she's smiling with her eyes closed , looks like she was enjoying it so much, she took the phone and sit on the bed with her hand on the chest..

Thali: ncooh..what a beautiful picture..

Me: really Thali? Is that what you are going to say?

Thali:(smiling) please don't tell me that you are jealous?

This woman here isn't taking me serious, I just walk out of the door and left her sleeping,

Sbu and Busi were dancing on the lounge,I got in and switched off the TV..

Busi: dude what the hell!?

Me: you are making noise and some of us want to sleep!

Sbu: why are you so grumpy?

Me:(pushing him) why am I so grumpy? You go around kissing my woman In public knowing that you are a celeb then you have the nerves to ask me why I'm so grumpy? Are you kidding me?

Sbu: whoah dude that was just harmless! You know how the media is,they twist everything to be about them..

Me: whatever Sbusiso, now please go and sleep I'm tired and stop this noise

Busi: you are such a bore, I was starting to like you

I showed her middle finger and walked back to the bedroom, Thali was sleeping, I sighed and took off her dress and shoes, she remained in her underwear and my God she was so sexy

I got a hard on immediately, I put her inside the blankets and went to the study to do some work...

-----SBUSISO----

After the stunt Busani pulled at us, Busi and I decided to go paint the town red at some private exclusive lounge and we came back home around 3 am, now I've been awoken up by a phone call from one of the

guys I spoke to yesterday, I was telling them about Thali's paintings and they want her to come and show case her work in the next 3 days..wow girl you are going international

I got up and put on my jogging clothes and hit the streets, I need to get the alcohol out of my system, I came back and found Thali drinking water in the kitchen wearing Busani's gown

Me: the lady I want to see

Thali: yooh please don't scream, you are hurting my head

Me: hangover girl hangover, sit down Mr SK will sort you out

She sat down on the stool and I made a hangover remedy and gave it to her..she made grumpy faces while she drank it

Me: so baby girl I've got you some good news

Thali: I could do with that, your brother is grumpy since yesterday..

Me: give him sex he will be fine

Thali: only if he allowed me to touch him, so what's the good news..

Me: okay so since we are trending from yesterday my guys from the other side wanted to know about you and I ended up telling them that you are an artist, didn't end there but also sent them some pics, you won't believe this

Thali: what?

Me: they want you to come in 3 days time to an exhibition to show case your work girl!

Thali: what? No you are joking right?

Me: girl, do I look like some kind of a comedian to you?

Thali:no it's just that, I didn't expect this to happen, especially not so soon, wow I actually thought that I will get to that level after like 3 years?

Me: well girl, it's happening in 3 days, stick with me and I will take you to places

Thali: (smiling) you the best

Me:(brushing off my shoulders) I know baby I know

Thali:(laughing) you are so full of yourself! But for real thank you..

She stood up and hugged me..then Busani cleared his throat walking in..

Thali: baby you are up..

Busani: looking all cosy

Thali: so I've got good news,

Busani:(he gave me an eye then turned to Thali) I'm listening..

I decided to leave them talking and went to take a shower , after that I head down for breakfast and Thali has left already, I noticed that they probably fight,but I didn't want to bother myself by asking because I could see that Busani is full of shit this morning..

Busani: when are you going back?

Me: urhm Monday..

Busani: okay, Sbu I love you as my brother but ngicela singajwayelani

I raised my eyebrow..

Me: excuse me?

Busani:you heard me, stop filling crazy idea to my woman's head ok? She is mine and you are not leaving with her

Oh wow..nigga is so unbelievably right now,he's going to deny his girlfriend a lifetime opportunity because of his jealousy? I can't believe him..I took my phone ..

Busani: your mom asked us for dinner later, be good son and show up

I showed him the middle finger and walked out.

----KWA KHOZA ----

Mrs Thembi Khoza was running up and down making sure that all the details of the dinner was ready

Mr Khoza was out he was said to he joining the family later.

Busiswe was the first to arrive to help her stepmom set the table, Sbusiso followed then Busani came with Thali, looks like they have ironed their issues

Thembi was so confused to see Busani with Thali because she thought u girl is dating Sbu but they explained the misunderstanding and it was cool

Thali didn't like the way Thembi looked at her when everyone was not watching, she gave her that evil eye, and she was very touch touchy with Busani, she was in her early 40s , had the Khabonina Qubeka fitness body, she was gorgeous

Thali asked to be excused because she didn't feel comfortable and went to the bathroom, shortly after that Thembi walked in

Thali:(startled) Mrs Khoza, didn't see you here..

Thembi: what are you doing in my house you little slut?

Thali: sorry what?

Thembi: oh so you are going to act like you have forgotten? I don't want you here, especially not with Busani

Just as she was making sense of what this woman was saying, she was called back because her phone was ringing, she walked out and Thali shook her head not believing what just happened

She fixed her make up and walked out, as she was passing kitchen going back to the lounge the kitchen door opened and umnumzane wekhaya walked in

Thali froze, Khoza's eyes popped out not believing who he was seeing in front of him, in that awkward situation Busani walked in, he kissed Thali on the cheek .

Busani: there you are, I was wondering where did you disappeared too, I see you two have met, dad this is my woman, Thali,. Love this is my father ..

Mr Khoza cleared his throat trying to compose himself as he gave his hand for a handshake

Mr Khoza: pleased to meet you Thali...

Thali didn't shake the hand , she just turned around and walked out

Busani: and then? What was that all about?

Mr Khoza: son let's have a word, quickly

They followed each other to the study and Mr Khoza poured himself a drink..

Busani:dad talk you are scaring me

Mr Khoza: son there's no easy way to say this so I will just say it as it is .

Thali and I once slept together..

Busani:(laughing) dad stop playing like that please..

Mr Khoza: Busani,I'm serious, and your mother found out she threatened me with divorce and...

Busani: wait are you serious?

Mr Khoza: I would never joke with something like that...

-----SBUSISO-----

Something was going on here, mom came back and Busani and Thali disappeared, and I'm sure I heard my father come in

I stood up and walked to the kitchen, there was no one here, I opened the door and Thali was pacing up down next to the cars scratching her head

Me: Thali

She quickly turned around and her eyes were red and wet

Me: whats wrong? Why are you here?

Thali: I messed up Sbu, my sins of the past are finally catching up on me .

Me: what are you on about?

Thali:(wiping her tears) there was a time in my life where by I was homeless and using my body to make a living and survive, so it's happened that one day your dad became my client

I shut my eyes as I processed this, dad a cheater? Buying sex?

Thali: and it's not that, your dad made a sex tape and I was drunk I agreed to it, unfortunately his wife saw it I don't know but they fought but he deleted it

I didn't even know what his name was or his surname, after the sex tape drama I deleted his number and blocked him everywhere.. now I don't know what to say, he's probably told Busani and he will freak out

I opened my eyes poor girl was shaking, I hugged her and she was cold..

Me: remember I told you that Busani isn't saint too? Well i guess he will understand that this happened in your past and it had nothing to do with the present, I'm sure he will look past that and you will move on?

Thali: if you were the one in the situation? Would you have looked past it and moved on?

Me: yes

Busani:no

We turned to look at him, he had his hands on his pockets and his eyes shallow..we just stood there and not know what to do...

To be continued..

Enjoy!❤️😊

[2/12, 23:48] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 44

-----BUSANI-----

After the discussion with my father I felt so heart broken, why does it have to be a woman that I love so much that did nasty things with my dad?

He told me that they even had a sex tape meaning that whatever they were doing they enjoyed it..

I was now looking at Thali looking at me with puppy eyes, I didn't want to be here anymore

Me: let's go home and talk

I opened the door, she hesitated first but then got in and we drove in silence to my house..

We arrived and I took off my jacket throwing it on the couch and went to pour some whiskey, I sat down and she also sat down

Thali:(cracky voice) baby, you haven't said a word since we left your parents house.. people talk to me..

Me: I don't know what to say Thalitha..

Thali: but baby it's happened way before I met you, I didn't have any idea who he was,all I needed was money and you know how your fellow gender is, he asked me to open my legs in exchange of that money..

Me: so you slept with anyone across your way as long as you got money?

Thali: what are you trying to say hlehle? Busani I never hid my past from you! You knew the kind of person I was and that I am still and you chose to be with me!

Me: (I stood up) this is different Thali, I can look past your rape incidents,your abortions,murder cases and other things,but this..it's difficult..

Thali:(standing up coming to my way) why? Baby tell me what do I need to do to make this right?

She put her hand on my face and her face was now wet with tears, I had them coming too

Me: you slept with my dad Thali, my dad! You opened your legs for him, he groaned on top of you, sucked your tits..

Thali: you are over thinking this babe, love we can get past this, I was young and foolish but we can make this work, I promise you .

She tried to kiss me, I kissed her back but then I couldn't go on,

Me;(rubbing my eyes) I'm sorry I can't..I don't think this will work. Everytime I will be on top of you I will imagine you and my father, or you will picture me as him..it's just too much I'm sorry

Thali:(biting her lips) so what's going to be?

Me: I don't know but right now I think we need to keep the distance between each other

Thali: are you breaking up with me? Right after we have found each other?

Me: Thali this is going to be very hard, I'm a jealous man, Everytime I take you home my parents will be uncomfortable, I'm sorry I can't

Thali:(wiping her tears with her hands) phew! Too bad because I was going to love you so bad, I was going to girlfriend you so good but then it's cool. I wish you all the best in life, see what I meant when I said it was better when we were friend? I knew that I carry a lot of baggage and look now, one past mistake showing up you are throwing away the towel..

Clearly you weren't the man for me, goodbye Busani

She left the house busy wiping her tears, she bumped into sbusiso who looked at her then closed the door

Sbusiso: when are you going to be dad's lucky?

Me: sorry?

Sbusiso:(rubbing his face with frustration) u weak Busani yoooh u weak! To think I used to look up on you! You are such a disappointment, im very much disappointed in you.

He disappeared to his bedroom I just sighed and sat down drinking more whiskey, then he came out with his bag of clothes and something wrapped up nicely

Sbusiso: Happy birthday in advance, she asked me to keep this for you so that you can't bump I into it and see it

He put it safely and walked out, I stood up and unwrapped the present, wow it was a portrait of me sitting on top of my car, on the Bonnet, I was holding my sun glasses while laughing at something, I don't remember her capturing this picture but it was so beautiful.

My birthday is in a week's time by the way, I looked at it for more than an hour, I was so happy in this picture, the details are visible so nicely

Me: wow Thali, does it really have to be you mara who slept with Dad? I can't take my dad's left overs..I can't

-----THALITHA-----

After leaving Busani's house I just walked out and to the streets, mind you it was around 10 pm now and it was starting to be chilly and dark, I was a crying mess, cars were hooting at me left right and center because I didn't see a way the way my face was soaked with tears.

Clearly I wasn't destined for happiness, just when I relax and let my guard down this happens? I hate u Majola even more, If he didn't do the things he did to me, I wasn't going to be at the streets to start with

I heard a car pulling next to me and I wiped my tears and it was Sbusiso, he took me to the car and we drove in silence to some hotel

He told me we can't go to my place in case his brother shows up, I need to rest .

We arrived at the hotel he made me water with some sugar and sat in front of me..

Sbusiso: how are you feeling now?

Me: I have a very terrible headache

Sbusiso: im so sorry Thali but I will say this, you keep falling for stupid and weak man, Busani is my dad's ass kisser and he has pride for days, he won't look past the fact that you love him, but don't worry, you will get someone who will love you for who you are

Me: thanks,but I'm done with men, for good this time, thank God I didn't tell my mom about me and Busani, how was I going to explain this?

Sbusiso: eix yeah neh..anyways small go take a bath you will feel better

Me:okay, thanks for being here

Sbusiso: anytime

He kissed my forehead and went out to his room, I sighed and dragged myself to the bath, I soaked myself for good 30 minutes

Got out and wrapped the towel around me, I looked at myself through the mirror and smiled..

I took my phone and called my mom informing her that I'm going to be away for a while ,I'm going to New York, she was sad that it's so soon but she understood and wished me all lucky

After speaking to my mom I felt so better I dozed off thinking about New York

I was awoken up by Sbusiso knocking, I yawned stretching my arms and got up to take a bath, I finished up and wore yesterday's clothes,my heart was still in pain , and my mood was numb

Me: mornings

Sbusiso:hey hey, how's you?

Me:(faking a smile)I will be fine.. you know I was hoping that maybe I will get a message or missed call from your brother but nix

Sbusiso: give him time to process all of this .I'm sure he will come around

Me: well I won't be here to wait for that to happen..

Sbusiso: what do you mean?.

Me: im coming with you to New York?..

Sbusiso':(standing up) for real?

Me: yah, time to start over and get a fresh air

Sbusiso:(spinning me around) yes yes yes yes yes yes yes and yes! Now that's a good decision you took.

I will sort out our tickets and visa, Wednesday we leaving baby

Me: yeah neh.. I can't wait, I'm nervous and excited at the same time

Sbusiso': don't worry sweetheart, with me by your side, you would never go wrong

Now go to your place and pack only necessary things, especially your paintings, don't worry about clothes.

You will get time to do a lot of shopping that side

I just smiled and he dropped me at my flat driving off, I took my phone and called Thando letting her know that I was leaving, told her about the drama and she agreed to have someone look after my flat. This is my home, should it not work out, I'm coming back so I won't sell it

I started packing necessary things and I won't lie, my heart was so heavy.

I was done around 1pm and I lay on the couch thinking about everything then my phone rang, it was a number I didn't recognize but I answered anyway..

Me:hello

Tony:it's Tony

I sat up straight with my heart beating faster..

Me: what do you want?

Tony: Thalitha how can you gate-crash my wedding like that? How are you this heartless? Who are you?

Me: ei jongapha musa ukundiqhela ikaka siyevana? Ain't you supposed to be on some honeymoon? Nxx nonsense! Don't call me again..

Tony: nc nc nc nc now because you are rolling with celebrates you think you breath a coloured oxygen..Thali this is life, you need to be humble..

Me:yet you couldn't, stop calling me or I will make sure your wife sex tape resurfaces , awundazi wena

I hung up and threw my phone on the couch, I was so angry and I started to do breath ins and out

I saw Busani walking in and I stood up, he just looked at me, I could tell that he didn't sleep.

Me:hey..

Busani:hello

Me: you good?

Busani:yeah

Me: great, want anything?

Busani:no I'm cool,I actually came here to say goodbye, Sbusiso told me you took the offer..

Me:(tear dropped, he's not here to fix things between us) yeah, I'm choosing me and my career this time around like you once advised me

I wish things were different but I guess it is what it is..

Busani:I wish they were different too but yeah, I really don't want to lie to you and give you false hope, I love you so much to do that

So I'm here to say goodbye and wish you all the best in New York, I know you will make it and I will come to support your work someday

You may have lost me as a lover but you haven't lost me as a friend..

And thank you for the birthday gift, I love it, it's beautiful

Im such a crying mess, now I had no voice, only tears were doing the talking

He pulled me to him and hugged me for a long time up until I've calmed down

He then ordered pizza and some wine, we drank up eating, he finally left when Sbusiso showed up, I was feeling a bit better

But the moment he left my heart bled again, Sbusiso hugged me saying it's going to be ok

-----THREE MONTHS LATER-----

-----SBUSISO -----

It's been three months now since Thali came to this side with me, I must admit the first week was hard as fuck, I had to nurse her moods that kept on changing now and then

After a month she got a hang of things and started picking up her pieces, I've decided to relocate to New York permanently because I'm mostly here vele so yeah

The past few months got her so busy that I hardly see her around, we live in the same house but yooh we don't see each other more often

I leave early and she comes back late, that's our life, busy!

I've called Busani the past month guy is also moving on, he told me he met a girl of Gugu Nkosi, I searched the girl, ai I must say my brother loves trouble but then hey, who am I to say anything? Apparently this girl was involved in killing her boyfriend, the same boyfriend who happened to be Thando's ex hey ai it's a lot

Well on my side, ngiyafa utswayi, I'm married to my work, it's past winter now and I have to release summer collection, I must say the weather this side it's fucked up but then as a designer you are always step ahead of it.

I swear the day I'm going to get sex, I will rip pussies,

-
-
-

Today it's Saturday and I've decided to be working from home, my office is so big that it's had a wardrobe, a table at the corner, a sewing machine, a couch and my office desk and chair

I was just on the phone call when There was knocked and I stopped sewing and said come in, Thali walked in carrying drinks

Thali:(smiling) hey you, I thought I should bring you something to drink since you have been locking yourself in here

Me: that's very thoughtful of you..long time no see

She laughed, she's healing nicely and I must say this place love her, the glow and she's picking up some weight of which is cute and strange, the way she's been overworking herself, im glad now she's off treatment then she can drink with me

Thali: it's like we don't leave together hey..

Me: it's our work sizothini.. speaking of work, how is it going?

Thali: pretty well hey, I'm making money hey, soon I will be able to afford my own place and car around

Me: you don't need to pressure yourself with that, you see how big this house is, cars are full outside . If you want to spend your money, fine but don't but don't do it on unnecessary things, spend it to your mom's

Thali: that's actually a good thinking, so what are you making?

Me:I was working on various designs , dresses, swim wear, but right now you walked in while I was trying this lingerie cut..since I launched it that time before coming home i haven't released anything..

Thali: (touching it)wow..the fabric is soft and I love the color,it's says " eat me" so sluty

Me: hahaha well, please hold for me and let me finish it..

Thali:(helping me) so when you are done with it,where does it go?

Me:(sewing) to the factory..

I turned it around and it was perfect, very perfect I felt proud, it was a White silky thong, it's only covered breasts, and the front view of the vagina, the details on the chest drove me crazy, I added a bit of fury and some blings to give it that vavavoom I got a hard on thinking about the woman who will wear this .fuck, white is classic

Thali:(touching it) wow!

Me: can you please help me check this out? Put it on and model for me please

She smiled and took it disappearing to the closet, my closet is a walk in, so huge,

She came out looking like a goddess, I sat on top of the table with my hands on my chest admiring this beauty..

Me: walk to the door

She catwalked to the door and how she her ass move from that piece drove me crazy, she turned around like the way models do and I cursed under my breath.

Me: stop

She stopped with her hand on her waist, I took the a diamond bracelet from my drawer that I'm sure it will match her son and the lingerie on her body

I walked to her and whispered

Me: model to that table, slowly and come back here

I went to stand next to the mirror that was in the middle of the room

She did as I told her to, every step she took was classic,like she did this shit better than some of the professional models

She got in front of the mirror and I came behind her, took off the necklace and she pulled up her hair so that I can put on the necklace

I put it on while looking at her through the mirror. When I was done I walked around her admiring my amazing work..

Me: beautiful, so fucken beautiful

I stood behind her again, closer this time she didn't move,

I placed my hands on her shoulders running them down to her arms,I moved her hair with my finger aside a bit and planted a warm kiss on her neck, my breathing's were heavy,

I want her

She closed her eyes as I continue planting the kisses on her body, my other hand was playing with her twins on her chest, they were so firm

I kept on running my hand on her body, to her tummy, rubbed her vagina outside the fabric, when I felt her toes toe-in g up, I stopped and turned her around to look at me.. her eyes were so small and red

Me:(whispering on her ear) what are you doing to me?

She didn't reply, I teased her with a kiss, pulling her up lip with mine and kissed the corner of her mouth, she hissed..

Me: I want you so badly right now..

Thali: (in a husky voice) stop talking Khoza and fuck me

Shit that turned me on some more, I picked her up and wrapped her around my waist, I walked with her out of the office to my bedroom, luckily for me it's not that far

I gently threw her at bed and took off my top, she bite her lips and that drove me crazy

I attacked her mouth with a kiss, we were so hungry for each other it was frustrating..

She helped take off my jeans and now we were both naked and she was still on my piece, it was too sexy to take it off

She grabbed my dick and I stopped her..

Me: easy sweetheart

I kissed her nose and I could see that she was getting frustrating, I got under my bed and came out with a box..my box of toys..

I put it on my bed and took off handcuffs, I saw her shift a bit but I kissed her

Me:(whispering) relax I won't hurt you, I just want you to never forget this moment ok?

She nodded and gave me her hands, I tied them up to my headboard

I did the same to her legs to each corners of my bed , now she was at my mercy, vulnerable and naked

I put a gag on her mouth and grabbed a few my glass of whiskey from the mini bar fridge on my room, put some few ice on them and walked to her drinking it

The desperation on her eyes was so beautiful, I went to her and removed the gag and kissed her, giving her some of the alcohol and closed her mouth again

I kissed her neck with my icy cold lips she tried to move but she had no place to escape

I slowly removed the lingerie and got to suck her boobs nicely, still with the ice on my mouth..

I continue planting the kisses down to her nana, I rubbed it with my thumb then used the ice to suck her clit, I saw her toes curls and tears dropped on her face, I smiled, I'm so hard right now and I want to fuck her hard but I want to make this memorable for her

I grabbed the vibrator and used it on her clit, she tried moving I kept her down

I removed it when it was covered with white liquids of her come..I replaced it with my hard rock dick and I groaned as I struggled a bit to enter, she was so damn warm and tight

I removed the gag on her mouth, I want to hear her when she calls my name,

I began to thrusts slowly, she was biting her lips, I picked up the pace and she called out my name

Thali:Khoza..

How she address me by my surname is even more sexier, I used the vibrator on her clit as I went hard she screamed again this time around shaking and I knew that her orgasms were close

Me: come for me baby, come for Daddy. In the count of three I want you to let go ok? .. alright, one..two..three come baby

She released and I fucked her through her wave of orgasms and threw the vibrator away as I also felt that I was close, I put my hand under her waist to lift her up a bit and went harder and I screamed her name and collapsed on top of her..

Shit I was breathing so hard,my cock twitching inside of her still hard, my cum oozing from her pussy to her legs..

Damn that was some good orgasm..I untied her and went out to grab a warm towel and cleaned us up

She was too tired to talk, I got her water and we laid naked with her on my chest

Me: baby , you ok?..

Silence

Me: hebana! So I've fucked you so good that you dumb? I must be good

Thali:(laughing lazily) hai voetsek marn Sbusiso can you keep quite

I chuckled a bit and kissed her forehead

Me: that was amazing, I enjoyed it so much

Thali:(slowly) i did too, a lot

Me: meaning we can do it again?.

Thali: (smiling)later..

Me:(with the mischievous smile) I will kiss It better

Thali: Sbusiso!

Me: please sweetheart, this time i will be gently

She just blushed and I disappeared between her legs and in a minute she was moaning grabbing my head...

To be continued, Thali will tell us on the next insert what Sbusiso did to her😊😊

Enjoy ❤️❤️

[2/13, 11:31] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 45

-----THALITHA-----

After the sweet love session we had we Sbu we passed out immediately, I slept so well and at peace.

I woke up before my alarm could ring,I checked the time it was 3:30 am and events of yesterday came back to my mind, part of me got disappointed and ashamed of what happened. It's really felt good but guilty washed over me, what if what happened with Busani happens again? And gosh I just jumped between brothers,yes I never slept with Busani but hey,you know society and their judgment.

I looked at Sbu who looked more handsome while sleeping, his tattoos damn, I sneaked out of bed and grabbed his t-shirt on the floor and walked barefoot to my own office.

I got in and switched on the light, it's was bit cold so I switched on the fan and went out to the kitchen to make coffee, Sbu's house is huge Sana it's like a hotel,I guess it's because he uses it as host sometimes

I finished making my coffee and went back to my office and sat down.

I started drawing, just keeping my mind from over thinking, actually I'm afraid of how things are going to be after this, Sbu is a handsome man, who's always surrounded by women, the one who model for his designs ,the one at the factory like nje yooh..

I was going hard on the pencil when I felt warm kisses on my neck and I jumped a little

Sbu: I felt my bed cold and realized you weren't there..what are you doing here so early?..

Me: I couldn't sleep so I thought I should get creative a bit.

He took my hand and helped me get up..

Sbu: come back to bed, it's cold and it's Sunday, we should be resting

Me:(sigh) okay

We walked back to the bedroom and he opened the covers for me, I got in still wearing his shirt, he pulled me closer to him with his hands wrapped around my waist and his lips on my forehead.

Me: Sbu

Sbu: yes baby

Me: what's going to happen now?

Sbu: about?

Me: us..what just happened between us..

Sbu: it's late babe let's sleep

Me: Sbusiso I need to know, I need to know if this was just a once off thing, or if it's going to be a no strings attached kind of thing, I need to know

Sbusiso sighed and sat up turning the bed light on, he cupped my face and looked at me straight into my eyes..

Sbu: I remember when I first laid my eyes on you Thalitha I felt this strong connection towards you, I ignored it thinking it was lust, I wanted you the first time we spoke, but then Busani told me that you have been through a lot, and I was scared to make a move because I knew right then that he loves you

Loving my brother and what happened to him in the past made me wish that he could move on and be happy, he's 29 and a bachelor, although he had his eyes on the woman I loved too but it was going to be a small price to pay after everything he has done for me.

I pushed you to get him, little did I know that things were going to be like that..when things didn't work out between you two I somehow believed in fate. Like I knew right away that it means you were supposed to be mine

It's broke me seeing you heartbroken over him, crying every day and night because of him whereas I was there in front of you

Thali I know you have insecurities, I have too, I know you are worried about your past but I'm not my brother, your past is exactly that, your past, it's got nothing to do with the present .

I'm not perfect but what I can promise you that I will love you like the way you deserve to, I will respect you, and I want us to continue being friends, don't be intimidated by public and the women I work with.

And what I want from you is to allow me, and don't compare me with your men in your past

So my answer to your question is that, I don't want us to be friends with benefits, I don't want us to be fuck buddies, I don't want what happened last night to be a once off

I want you, as a whole .

Me: what are you saying kahle kahle..

Sbusiso: I'm single, you are single, can we be boyfriend and girlfriend?

I just smiled and nodded..

Me: Sbusiso don't hurt me please, I'm taking a high risk with you..

Sbusiso: I know and like I've said before baby I will not hurt you intentionally, I promise

I just nodded and he planted a kiss on my mouth, I looked at him, he kissed me again this time fully and I responded

He removed the shirt and played with my boobs as his tongues were dancing on each other's mouth, the way my body was responding to him was crazy

He lay on his back and brought me on top of him, I spread my legs on his hips as I took Khoza Junior in me, guy is thick and long, Tony's dick was huge but this one yooh

When he was in me fully I began to grind on top of him and he grabbed my butt kissed me hard and that fueled me to bounce on him,he groaned....

Sbu:fuck! Baby this is good.

Me:(increasing my pace) oh yeah....

Sbu:yes

I was bouncing and grinding all together and he was playing with my boobs, his hand on my ass, he kinda fingered me on the ass, it was a bit uncomfortable at first but he told me not to focus on the pain and I did and the pleasure I got was just out of this world,I felt my body building up and I dug my nails deeper on his chest as I released hard him, he quickly flipped me over and held me on the doggy position, he fucked me through my orgasm wave and I came again, this time with him,I lay down with my stomach thinking he was done but no I was wrong,he continued fucking me with sperms deep in me

We came again and dozed off, I slept with my stomach down and him hugging me from behind and I knew I was happy...

-----SBUSISO -----

I don't remember when last I slept this good, let alone have sex this amazing, I've had sex before but what I had with Thali, damn..

It's true when they say that sex feels different with someone you love. I love her, I have a girlfriend,a beautiful and smart one at that.

I don't care what she did in the past, ain't no saint too and I'm going to protect her from everyone and anything against her

I woke up and it's was around 8:30, it's late for my morning jog but I can still do some push ups on the house gym

I looked at her sleeping peacefully and kissed her cheek, she was naked and her bum view was just driving me crazy, I got on a crazy hard on.

I moved up a bit and entered her slowly from behind, it was easy because she was wet from the sperms stuffed in her, she felt me deep inside her and stirred on her sleep moaning with her eyes closed and shit that was good

I grabbed her boobs and went faster and I had a beautiful come, I pulled out and took the towel wiping myself and her .I kissed her

Me: morning baby

Thali:(still her eyes closed) morning.. what time is it?

Me: still early go back to sleep

She said ok and silence filled the room, I got out of the bed, picked up the toys we were playing with yesterday and put them away, I opened windows and went to wash my face and brush my teeth.

I picked up the lingerie she wore and went to throw it on my study

I went to the gym and picked up few weights, and did 50 push ups and 25 sit ups , I was a sweaty messy when I was done

I walked back to my bedroom to shower and it was around 9:45 now and girl was still sleeping, shame, I kinda exhausted her

I let her bed and went to take a shower ,it's Sunday after all she needs the rest

I finished up and went downstairs to look for something to eat, well I'm many things but I don't know how to cook except boiling eggs and frying Russians.

My house keepers are off on weekends unless when I ask them to come on special occasions.

I ordered us delicious breakfast and went to finish on the pieces I was working on last night

I stopped when the delivery arrived, I put Thali's on the microwave and ate mine. I had a huge appetite must be the exercise I've been doing in the bedroom of course.

I finished up all the necessary things and called my driver to come fetch the samples so that tomorrow at the factory they can start working on them immediately,it was the lingerie,dresses and some swim wear

I think it's time I design something for my fellow brothers, since im a stylish man myself, a male clothing line won't be so bad

Immediately after the driver has left Thali walked on the lounge wearing my boxers, sleepers and her spot bra I must say she looks so sexy

Her hair was wet and uncombed,damn,I hugged her and kissed her

Me:uyalala shame..good after noon

She looked at the watch on the wall and realized it was 12:36 and gasped I just laughed

I warmed her food and brought it to her with her juice and she ate as if she was arrested I laughed.

I cleared the dishes and we chilled on the couch with her head on my chest watching Acrimony movie..

Me: so baby I was thinking..

Thali:oh oh..that's not a good idea, you thinking?

I playfully hit her on the arm and she laughed

Me: I'm serious njalo please focus

Thali: sorry babe I'm all ears..

Me:good. So I was thinking how about we moved your things to my bedroom now that we are officially together? There is a lot of space in my closet. I just want to wake up next to you in the middle of the night and make love to you, and wake up in the next morning with you on my arms everyday

Thali: that's not a problem,but can you ask your stuff to move the things tomorrow morning when they arrive? I'm tired today I just want to lazy around

Me:you can tell them as well, I think we should let them know that you are the madam of the house now and they can take orders from you

She just smiled and I kissed her mouth feeding her chips

Thali: since we are making moves on our relationship, how about we go see a doctor and do some blood tests and go on a pill? I can't afford to fall pregnant with how our lives are so busy at the moment..

Me:(chuckling) but I wouldn't mind having a mini Sbu running around the house..

Thali:(laughing) uyajabula shame..and thats another thing, I don't know if Busani told you, there's a possibility that I might not be able to carry a child full term in future or fall pregnant at all

Me: don't worry about all of that love, by the time we are ready for a baby,we will look at all options and if what Busani said is true then we will go for a surrogate or adopt..

Thali: you are too sweet you know that..

Me:I know but I don't mind hearing it from you..

Thali:(hitting me) you are so stupid wena

Me: okusalayo ungithanda kunjalo..

A MONTH LATER

Things were going well between Thali and I, we are growing on our careers and our relationship, we did go to the doctor and did all the necessary tests. He confirmed what Busani said, Thali won't be able to have kids in future, that kinda hurt her but me. I didnt care because I love her. Kids or not it's doesn't matter.

I'm learning a lot of things about her such as the fact that she got trust issues of which is understandable judging by her past, and that she hates confrontations, she will leave the heated argument to cool down and come back to talk to me calm, and also that as little as she is, she has mean punches from her mouth, she's a straight talker like that

All in all that's what make our relationship fun and exciting, and not to forget the bomb sex we have everyday and in two days time it's her birthday, I need to make it special, my woman is turning 20 yaay..

-----NICOLE -----

We were on the doctor for our normal check up, I was now 9months pregnant and due anytime to give birth, Michael and I can't wait to be parents, the doctor put the cold jelly on my stomach and did a scan

I saw my baby moving and tears escaped my face. I was too happy words couldn't fill me .

Doctor: well folks looks like you are having a baby girl

I just smiled at that..a mini me

Me : love did you hear that? We are having a girl

He just smiled weakly, we finished up and walked home, I kept on wondering what's wrong with this guy

Why is he acting so cold and odd, is it because of the gender of the baby?

Me: Michael what's wrong? Why are you this cold?

Michael: what do you want me to say? Nicole you forced me to father another man's baby and you expect me to be all jolly about that .

Me: Michael we spoke about this long time ago and I thought you were cool with it , what is it now?

Michael: you literally forced me, I had no choice but to support you because i didn't want to be seen heartless..

Me: and now why are you charging your mind?

Michael: Nicole we are not financial stable, I'm struggling on getting a permanent job since SK fired me and now we are bringing a baby. I seriously think that you should take this child to her father. I mean Sbu is loaded he can take care of her easily

Me: that's not going to happen, Sbu hates my guts and she kicked me out of his house like a dog

Michael: what did you expect him to do when he caught us in bed together?

Me: baby please don't turn your back on me. You know I don't have anyone, I only have you please

Michael: I will not turn on you I'm just saying this is putting a strain on me..

I felt my baby kick harder than normal and then there was this unbearable pain on my back..I took few steps to balance on the table and my water broke.. Michael panicked and moved around but finally he got me on the car driving to the hospital...

-----THALITHA-----

Happy birthday to you

Happy birthday to you

That was Sbu singing for me at 5 am and I couldn't help but giggled, he is just so sweet,

I smiled and turned to look at him, he had this cup cake with a candle on it

Sbu: happy birthday baby, make a wish .

Me : I wish that we grow old together, that we love each other through everything and that our name be a legacy

Sbu: such beautiful wishes baby..it's so cute

He kissed me and the next thing we were having a birthday sex..

Around 6:30 we took a shower together, I dressed up on a dress made by his truly, my man, apparently he was taking me to some fancy restaurant for breakfast ,then shopping and do other activities nje on my birthday and I'm happy

Family and friends also called wishing me a happy birthday, even Busani sent me a message..

I was looking all gorgeous on an off shoulder red dress and my black heels, I carried my black clutch bag to the kitchen and Sbu whistled

He was on an all black attire, one would swear we were attending some event,

Sbu: ma'am Khoza you are flames

I just blushed, he came and helped me with the diamond necklace that was also my birthday gift

Then our head maid came to us holding a baby cot walking to us

Sbusiso: I didn't know you had an infant, such a cute baby

I just looked at the baby once and felt my heart beating hard, she was dressed in pink and was mixed race but she looked like Sbu it was like kuphikwe izinkani

The maid: the baby it's not mine, I found her at the door with this letter

She gave me the baby and Sbu took the letter reading it while the lady walked away..

The baby was so adorable and she was sucking her thumbs, I carefully held her head and stood next to Sbu when he read the letter

" SK

It's me Michael, I don't have much to say because I'm too devastated to say anything.

Nicole gave birth to this baby yesterday and died an hour later to some complications, I'm struggling financially and I can't raise this baby alone so I thought it was fair returning her to you

I will just bury Nicole and move back to Germany to look for a better job there

Her mother named her Praises, you are welcome to do paternity tests if you suspect foul play

Michael"

Wow, Sbu and I looked at each other and Praises started to cry

Me: I think she's hungry

Sbu:(shocked and frustrated) but who dumped a baby on someone's door and don't bring food

Me: love would you calm down..call the head maid so that she can accompany us, first stop is the doctor, second one the police station for affidavit then third one is home affairs then we will go get her everything she needs

Sbusiso:(shocked) ain't you angry?

Me: no..not at all.. actually I feel like this is a best birthday gift ever..a chance to motherhood..

Sbu smiled and kissed my forehead taking Praises from me

Sbu: you are a rare human being. I must say she looks like me.. she took her mom's complexion

Me:right? That's what I noticed that she's you nje..a real Khoza

Sbu: do you want to name her ?

Me:(smiling) I thought you were going to, but since you gave me the honors, I name her Sivuyile, Praises Sivuyile Khoza

Sbu: beautiful names, I didn't know that you existed Hlase but now that you are here, I welcome you with warm hands and I will love you with everything in me...

Mkhathini

He kissed her forehead and now she was not crying

We left the house and did all the rounds around 5 pm I was so tired I didn't want anything but I was happy, now Praises was officially mine, she had a birth certificate and was healthy I was happy

One of the maids was given the task to focus solely on her

We were now resting on our bed relaxing..

Sbu: you know my plans for you got distracted by the arrival of Praises.. what are we going to tell the family,?

Me: the truth maybe?

Sbu: yeah,but let's wait until she's two weeks

Me: okay, wow I can't believe that I am a mother

Sbu: will you cope with your career Mara baby?

Me: I will have to make it work..ngiyimbokodo after all

Sbu laughed and I joined him too..

Sbu: thank you my superwoman, with you I was probably going to go crazy..I'm one lucky and blessed bastard..

Me: say that again..and baby I was thinking that we locate this Michael guy and help him bury Nicole, she gave us a beautiful gift the least we can do is to make sure she get a dignified burial

Sbu: you are right, I will get on it soon , and I will help him get a job,just got with me again

Me: thank you

Sbu: I have a surprise for you

Me: okay..

He got up and went to the closet and came up with a box wrapped up nicely

I opened it and a matte black silky lingerie came out

I looked at it turning it around and I spotted a sign of my initials at the bottom..I froze..

Sbu: this was inspired by you sthandwa Sam. We will be launching it in two weeks time , I named it after you, so it's means every money I make out of it, you are getting a cut..

Me: wow baby I don't know what to say this is beautiful I'm speechless..

Sbu:(kissing me smiling) that was the reaction I was hoping for, now go put it on..

Me:(smiling mischievous) yes daddy

I got up he spanked my ass and I giggled to the bathroom...

To be continued..♥

[2/17, 09:12] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

INSERT 46

-----THALITHA-----

Today's the morning after my birthday and I woke up looking at my handsome boyfriend next to me and smiled..

It's been a couple of months since we have been together and I've never been this happy.

I never knew that I would be happy with him, with everything that has been going on in my life, I've already threw the towel up

And now I am a mother to a beautiful gorgeous baby, thinking of her gives me goosebumps, God I pray that you give me strength to raise her with love, to make sure she never feels like she's not my biological daughter. To protect her and correct the wrongs of my mom through her....

Sbu: morning..

That was Sbusiso disturbing me from my thoughts, I smiled and looked at his sleepy face....

Me: morning Daddy

He smiled beautifully and I kissed his lips

Sbusiso: I can't believe I am a father, like baby we are parents

Me:(grinning) I can't believe either..but I'm scared..

Sbu: what's scaring you?

Me: love it's like I'm biting more than I can chew. What do I know about motherhood and with my crazy career, our families..

Sbu:(pulling me to his chest) sweetheart you are worrying a lot about things that don't matter , I love you and I'm here, we will figure this parenting thing together okay?

Me:(smiling) okay

Sbusiso: perfect, now kiss your man

I just laughed and kissed him,he deepened the kiss flipping me over and I laughed

Me: baby I have to go check up on Praises

Sbu: kancane nje sthandwa Sami I will be quick

With that said we had our morning Glory...

6 MONTHS LATER

-----BUSANI-----

the past 8 months without Thali and I must say I've finally let her go, last month they told us that they have a baby girl, well my family were happy for Sbusiso having a child but they weren't too happy about him and Thali

I wasn't too at first but then I realized that I'm the one who lost Thali, the one who actually pushed her to Sbusiso so I have no say to their business other than being happy for them,

Gugu and I have grown close the past few months and I must say she's a wonderful woman, she gets me, I get her too

She's no angel but I love her and she makes me happy

Speaking of her ,she walks in wearing my hoodie and it's fitting her so damn sexy, with her curves and ass damn

Gugu:baby your brother is trending

Me: what did he do?

Gugu: well he named his debut lingerie collection after his girlfriend

I snatched the iPad from her and the internet was going crazy, it was so sexy and gorgeous and what made it more sassy it was the fact that Thali modelled on it and did a photoshoot

Wow, she's even picking up weight on the right places, I really lost a gem here..

Me: she's beautiful..

Gugu: right? Baby I'm ordering this one..I want to rock it for you one day

I faked a smiled and looked at her

Me: and you will be so sexy on it mommy

I kissed her and she wrapped her legs around me..

-----SBUSISO-----

It was the celebration party after an awesome day we had launching my piece

I must say my life has taken an interesting turn now, I'm a father to a healthy beautiful baby girl

Thali is doing an amazing job at being a mother, yes she has her days when she get down and tired because she's also a human being, but thanks to her mom who's very supportive even on the other side of the world, we Skype with her when we get stuck and our house keepers are doing a great job

We gave Nicole a dignified funeral and expensive tombstone, she was a hoe but she gave me an amazing gift, my daughter, my Praises, my Sivuyile..

My family were happy that I have a child but not happy with my relationship with Thali of which has made me not to go home anytime soon, they need to register it on their minds that Thali is here to stay and akayi ndawo

Well my brother has been a bit offish since he found out about Thali but hey, I don't care really..

I was doing a lot of hand shaking and smiling, cameras everywhere, Thali left shortly after the midday show was over saying she misses Praises

Then I saw my old friends with benefits child, Jessica. She looked extra amazing, I heard that she's married now to some Indian business tycoon

She came to me flashing that gorgeous smile and she was rocking one of the dresses I designed and boy she looked so sexy..she tried to kiss me but I gave her my cheek instead

Jess: Sbu..oh my God you look so handsome hey

Me:so are you Jess, you are still sexy and gorgeous

She smiled and took my hand leading me to some private room, she closed the door locking it and attacked me with a kiss and her legs wrapped around me we were breathing hard, and I was caressing her fine firm boobs , damn she was not wearing any underwear, my hand went to her wet pussy and I massaged her clit, she moaned on my mouth, grabbing me hard, I went in and out her pussy with my hand, she groaned indicating that she wanted more, poor lady, looks like she's not getting it enough at home, I took her to bed,

She flipped me over and worked on my belt..

Jess: damn I've missed your big cock hey

I just chuckled and when she was to take out my dick something moved in me and I stopped her

She looked at me puzzled and I pushed her away from me and got up fixing my belt

Jess:(puzzled) Sbu..

Me:(checking any evidence of her make up on my shirt and perfume) I'm sorry Jess I can't do this..

Jess:(pleading) Sbu you never said no to me before come on..

Me: because I haven't found a woman that I was afraid to cheat on..I can't cheat on that woman Jess I'm sorry

Jess: what is that she has that I don't huh..I'm more sexier and beautiful than her..and I'm sure I'm the best in bed too

I smiled and went to her and looked at her ...

Me: you see the difference between you two is that she doesn't use sex to keep me but she use it to please me . you asked what she has that you don't well my answer is that, she has brains..

Goodbye Jessica,get up,dress up and go home, your husband is waiting for you

She slapped me so hard I just laughed getting up and showed her the middle finger and left the room, I felt things breaking, she was throwing things at the door trying to hit me, thirsty hoe

I got in the car and my driver took off, I arrived around 9 and the house was quite

I went to check on Praises she was sleeping already, I kissed her cheek and went to the bedroom

I switched on the lights and Lord have mercy on me..Thali was in one of the lingerie we released earlier, looking all sluty and gorgeous.

Thali: I thought you were not going to come..

Me: I will always come back..this is home

Thali:(smiling,she got up and walked to him)I've missed you so much

That did things on me that I can't explain,she looks more sexy than earlier

Me: I missed you even more baby

She kissed me and I responded, when the kiss got deeper she stopped smiling

Thali: congratulations on the beautiful show and launch, you are trending

Me:all thanks to you baby..

Thali: come to bed, let's sleep it's been a long day

She went to bed, leaving me standing there,I took off my blazer ,the tie and the shirt came out same time, I was now left with a vest as I worked on my pants and shoes, she just looked at me so seductive busy biting her lips

I took off the vest and she helped me remove the watch and I got in bed taking her to me..

We kissed and she was just grinding on top of my dick and it was so damn hard

I ran my hand on her soft skin to her back and she was kissing my neck

I unhooked the lingerie off her and she was left bare naked on top of me,

Thali: baby wait

Me: uh uh baby please I want you, you can't do this please..

She kissed me and got off from me I felt like crying, she shake her ass going to the closet and came back with our toys box and I smiled..

It's been a while since we played and she tied me up last time

She saw the smirk on my face and chuckled, she took out the whip from the box, we never used it

She gave it to me and lay next to me bending her ass

Thali: I've been a very bad girl baba ka Praises please punish me

Me: fuck Thali ungenzani kodwa

The way she did everything so sexy

I took the whip and got up walking around the bed admiring the view , she teased me with her looks, I smacked her ass, not too much just okay, she moaned and that drove me crazy

Me: like that baby

I said whipping her again

Thali: yes baby

Fuck I whipped her three times and she was moaning so fucken sexy and I lost my senses

I grabbed the handcuffs and tied her up and brought her to me ..

I kissed her as I entered her she was so wet, ready for me..

Me: I fucken love you so much..

Thali: I love you too

I began moving inside her and she moved with me with her hips and gosh it was the feeling that was out of this world..now tell me why would I cheat on someone this awesome .

After the whole steamy session , she rested her head on my chest, mine hugging her body.. she's gaining weight I'm feeding her good

I ran my hand all over her body to her tummy, it's hard and growing..

Thali: Hai marn Sbusiso I'm trying to sleep here..

Me: sleep baby

Thali:ngizolala kanjani ungipotopotoza?

I just laughed and kissed her forehead..

Me: okay baby I'm sorry, love..when last did you go to your periods?

Thali: I don't remember, two months back or something. Why do you ask?

She said turning her back and sleeping...

Me: ain't they supposed to come every month kanti? I'm asking because it's been a while since we got disturbed by them, like I don't remember when last we didn't have sex because of them..

Thali: (sitting up straight) oh my God! You are actually right! Could it be what I think it is?

Me:(smiling) could be, I mean you are glowing and gaining weight in the right places, I mean your tummy is growing too, and lately you have been having a huge appetite and weird cravings and very emotional not to forget how much of sex addict you have become

She hit me on my arm..see what I'm talking about

Thali: stop lying,I'm not a sex addict, if anyone is an addict here,it's you

Me: remember when you were all grumpy last week because I walk up and went to work before I could sex you up? You were breaking the dishes

She laughed hiding her face on me and I chuckled remembering the day

Thali: you are crazy,it's you moes who got me used to some good sex and loving in the morning

Me:on a serious note baby, can you handle another baby?

She touched her tummy and smiled

Thali: I don't know but then if your crazy theories are correct then I will be happy and so ready

Me: what about work? Praises alone is driving us crazy as we speak

Thali: I will have to retire, be a house wife and work at home..

Me: you, retire?

Thali: yes..my man is a millionaire now why not?.

I just smiled and kissed her bringing her on top of me..

Me : I should wife your crazy ass

Thali: yes please

-
-
-
-

The following morning we woke up and did our hygiene process and went to have breakfast

It was Saturday meaning the stuff was off so it was me and my family

We had breakfast with Praises doing all the baby sounds , Thali fed her then we bathed her ,dressed her

We also took turns in bathing then we left the house to the doctor..we needed confirmation of our suspicions

And indeed Thali was pregnant, the way I was so happy, I kissed her at the doctor's surgery, her face was wet with tears, I thanked the Lord millions time for this

She was crying because she was scared at the possibility of not carrying the baby full term but the doctor told us what to and what to avoid and said we should come for check up more often

There was a possibility of our baby being born a premature at 8 months or so but I will deal with that when time comes now I'm happy and I love Thali even more.

I took my phone and called my brother,I need to share the news

Busani:Khoza..

Me:broe I'm going to be a father again

Busani:wow congratulations..you adopted?

Me: no..Thali is pregnant and I'm so happy

Busani: what? How?..

Me:bra..God works in mysterious ways hey..this is his glory and mercy

Busani: indeed this is a miracle.. congratulations on your up coming baby, you really are growing your family..

Me: yes and I'm wifing her.

Busani: wow

I saw her coming and I smiled , my God how did I become so lucky

Me: let me go brother we will talk

I hung and walked to her taking Praises from her and kissed her making people stare at us but I didn't give a damn

Me: you are ok?.

Thali:yes, I'm fine actually

I put Praises down and knelt down she covered her mouth with her eyes wide open

Thali; Sbusiso no.. get up please

She was freaking out and I just laughed, people were starting to gather around..

Me: sthandwa Sam, I don't have a ring with me right now but u can't wait anymore.. I love you so much, you have given me so much happiness and love, you loved me for who I am, the time I've spent with you has been nothing but amazing,

You loved my daughter, you didn't let the society's myth about me being a fuck boy scared you

Sthandwa Sam all in all I'm trying to say, I can't live without you anymore, I don't see myself ngaphandle kwakho

Please make me the happiest man and be my wife

People went " ncooh" and Thali was crying mess, her face so wet with tears

Thali: yes..i will be your wife

I got up and kissed her spinning her around and I picked up Praises the crowd was clapping hands so happy, but not like me ...

-----TONY-----

I was on my office drinking my whiskey when Seth walked in all smiles holding a tablet

Me: and then..

Seth: look at that..my girl finally found her happily ever after

He handed me the tablet and it was a video of Busani proposing, wow that was really cute..

Me: she's happy..

Seth: and that makes me happy, their wedding will be the talk of this world I'm telling you and I can't wait to attend it

Me: I'm glad she finally healed and moved on hey

Seth: yeah after everything you your hoe of a wife put her through, she deserves it

Me: true, I wish I could erase the past , but what's done is done

Seth: and you should let her go BEFORE It Become Your END..

-----THE END-----

New story coming soon



[3/5, 18:51] Thembelihle: BEFORE THE END

SEASON 3

INSERT 47

***** 20 YEARS LATER*****

-----THALITHA-----

" Praises have you seen my phone" that was me going down to my lounge as I was preparing to attend some family gathering the Khozas arranged.

Praises: here mama

Praises appeared with it from the bedroom. My daughter has grown to be an amazing strong woman. I thank God everyday for my family, after everything that I've been through, I'm really happy that it was worth it .

PraiseGod:(we'll call him PG) mom do we really have to attend this family gathering nton nton?

Me:(laughing) ewe son , we have to. Now hurry up and get your brother. Your father will be mad if we arrive late.

He groaned and disappeared to the house. I am 39 old and my husband is 46, blessed with three beautiful children, Praises who's 20, PraiseGod (18) and my last born Emmanuel who's 13. I love my kids with everything in me. When Praises turned 18 we decided to come back home and retire. We have invested in so many businesses and now it's time to enjoy the fruits of our labour and spend time with family.

Sbusiso Khoza is indeed what his name State, a blessing, God knows I would never have asked for a better husband and friend other than him. Our loves grows everyday, yes we do have fights every now and then like any other married couple but our love conquers all.

We are going to attend a family gathering, I must say I'm looking forward to it, well Mrs Khoza senior made peace with me being her daughter in law although at first she gave me a hard time , calling me a slut who jumped from father to brothers.

My mom passed away 5 years back so you can actually say the Khozas are practically my family. Busani married Gugu and they have twins, girls who are so cute.

Thando and I are still friends, she's my prayer warrior, my comforter and all. Together, we make marriage look easy..haha I'm kidding.

Praises: well I'm ready to go.

That was Praises disturbing me from my thoughts..

Me: boys let's go..hurry.

I took my bag and we went to the car and drove to my in-laws.

We arrived early than the other guests, I took the gifts to the kitchen and met hubby who was wearing overalls dazzling hot.

Sbusiso: I was about to send a search party for you guys.

Praises: I drama engaka Tata. Si early kaloku(So much drama dad, we are even early).

My kids grew up in New York but my husband and I made sure that they are fluent with isiXhosa and Isizulu.

Me: myeke wethu, uyamazi nje akakhoni ukuphila ngaphandle kwami (leave him, you know he can't live without me).

Praises: ncooh , but you guys are so cute. Mama, I wish when I'm ready to get married I settle down with a guy like dad.

PG: as long as you won't date lunatics ,then you will get a guy like dad..

Emmanuel: erh hai ke.. you are going to bring up that Everytime now?

Praises: mbuze mntase..(ask him broe)

Praises and PG are always on each other's throats, I guess it's the age Gap between them but they love each other too death. While on the other side, Emmanuel and Praises are besties.

Sbusiso:okay boys stop it. Come with me and let's go greet your uncle's. Let's leave them ladies to the kitchen.

We proceeded to the kitchen and got our aprons on and started to peel veggies. Soon Busisiwe arrived and it's became vibey, her and Praises got along..

*****SOMEWHERE IN MPUMALANGA*****

In one of the mines at MPUMALANGA, in witbank, we find the CEO ,Mr Lungisani Nkosi busy with paperwork, he is disturbed by a knock on his office door.

Lungisani: Langelihle, come in broe

Langa: I seriously don't wish to be you right now..

Lungisani: if we could swap positions just for one day.. please marn.

Langa: forget it. I know nothing about this business..

Lungisani: yeah sure, yet you reap all the benefits, must be nice being a last born neh.

Langa: yati ngiyafika nje ngivela eGoli ngitsi angite straight Lana ngitokubona mara ai, ngatsi ngente liphutsa. (I just came straight from Jozi and I thought I should come straight to see you but I feel like I've made a mistake)

Lungisani: awu kahle wena awusadlaliswa yini? (Come on, can't you take a joke now?)

That was Lungisani standing up to give his brother a handshake and brotherly hug.

Lungisani is a 34 years old first born to Alfred and the late Thembi Nkosi. Their father is the richest man in MPUMALANGA, they own various businesses but the one that's generating lots of money it's the mine because they also run some shady deals through it. Like they do some imports and exports with Ghana. He is married to a beautiful sociological lady Namhla Nkosi and they have a son together.

Langelihle is the 30 year old guy who is based in Alberton, Joburg. He is not married but in a 6 year relationship with his girlfriend Sbahle. Langa chose a different path and is running his own media company with the help of his girlfriend who's a editor in Chief for their online magazine, Gloss.

The last born to the siblings is Tengetile Nkosi who's 26 years old who's studying law at the University of Pretoria. She's guarded like a royal princess, the brothers won't hesitate to kill anyone harming their sister.

Their father is a bachelor who's up and down the world chasing money, he has few women that entertains him though.

Langa: ai utsi umuntfu angakwati kodwva wena? Ngoba ufana ne weather nje. (One can never be too sure with you, you are just like weather)

Lungisani: ai Suka mnaka nawe usheshe utfuke marn (you get scared easily) . Anyway how's the business?

Langa: coming up okay, especially the magazine.

Lungisani: that's good, the madam still good?

Langa:(smiling, revealing his silver tooth) she's awesome.

Lungisani: great, you are coming to my place right?

Langa: no. I was thinking I will be home for..

Lungisani:(picking his phone) nonsense, dad is not around, you will be bored alone with workers there. Come stay with us. Even if it's for today.

Langa: okay. I can't argue with you, umdzala after all.

Lungisani winked at him as he called his gorgeous wife,Namhla and told her about his brother coming over. They spoke for a few minutes with Langa chatting with his girlfriend informing her that he travelled safe.

Langa stayed with Lungisani helping him with few things until he knocked off. They got out of the office laughing to their separate cars, Lungisani driving an Audi Q7 with Langa driving a Mercedes Benz AMG.

They drove to the suburban side of Witbank and parked in front of one beautiful house.

They walked in to the kitchen where Lungisani's son Lwethu came running

Lwethu: daddy daddy..

Lungisani picked him up, as soon as Lwethu saw Langa he switched sides and Lungisani laughed proceeding to the kitchen.

He found his wife wearing her gorgeous short dress cooking. He hugged her from behind and kissed her neck.

Lungisani: smells great in here..what are you making?

Namhla: nothing fancy baby , I prepared the oxtail Stew..

Lungisani: perfect, let me freshen up a bit I will be back..

Namhla: okay..uphi babomncane wa Lwethu? (Where's is Langa)

Lungisani: I'm not sure ,look him around the house

Namhla reduced the heat on the stove and went to look for Langa and found him checking up whiskies.

Namhla:(smiling) Lungisani tells me that you will be staying with us?

Langa:(Turning around to look at her) oh hi there.. yes, he begged me to stay. It's won't be long though, tomorrow I'm going home

Namhla:(disappointed) oh, I was hoping we will have you around for a quite longer.

Langa: unfortunately no.

Namhla: are you going to be this hostile untill when Langa mara heh? I apologies njena..

Langa: and I forgave you didn't I?

Namhla: doesn't look like..

Langa:(chuckling) look here madam, just because I forgave you doesn't mean I've forgotten. Lungisani is my brother, I love him and respect him and I know that he loves you so much, so stop this whoring behavior and be a good wife to him. Geez what's wrong with you?

Langa walked out to the guest bedroom leaving Namhla blinking stopping the tears. On a family gathering last year December Namhla tried to make a move on Langelihle taking an advantage that he was drunk but he pushed her over and they had a serious argument. The person who saw this was Tengetile whom Langa begged so much not to tell Lungisani. Since then, Tengetile and Namhla don't see eye to eye.

****Few days later****

*****PRAISES KHOZA****

I was happy the family gathering nton nton was over and we were back home. Not that I don't like being with people or family it's just that I am a loner, it's got worse when my ex boyfriend kidnapped me and tried to rape me. Mom went all ninja on him and shot him between his legs, rumor says he won't be able to have kids ever, save him right.

The thing I don't like being around family is that our grandparents don't like us, they say we are spoiled and think we are better because we grow up in New York of which is not true . Yes our parents are rich and famous but we are not spoiled brats, everything we have , including the cars we drive we have worked so damn hard for them. I completed matric when I was 16 and enrolled on drama,film and television degree. We moved her after I've turned 19 so I enrolled at UJ to finish it off there. Recently I've written a successful play that I hope will open doors for me. I don't want to be the kind of girl who uses his parents fame and riches to get to the top , well my brother PG says it's not a crime, he is into music. One thing I love about my parents is that they let us do whatever we want to do, they don't choose for us but give us unconditional support and love to everything we want to do.

Emmanuel my baby broe is still in high school and the champ says he want to follow dad's footsteps and mo guy couldn't be happier.

I don't have much of friends, yeah I have a huge following on social media but thats it.. followers. My parents and brothers are my friends, they always follow me around anyway so yeah..

I had just changed into pyjamas when PG knocked on my door with his big earphones on his head..

PG: can I come in?

I rolled my eyes because he was already in and removed the duvet and got under the bed, he sat next to me.

Me: what do you want?

PG: why are you always on attack mode?

Me: it's you who always attack me njena..

PG: relax,I'm not here for that, I just wanted us to bond.

Me: you,bond with me? That's a first!.

PG:(laughing) ai musukunya I'm always nice to you njena..

Me:(laughing) I'm kidding..what's up?

PG: please don't scream..

Me: I promise not to..

PG: so there's this girl I like..

I screamed and he closed my mouth with his hand..

Me:(laughing) sorry,it's just that I was starting to worry thinking maybe you are gay or something..

PG: usisibhanxa somntwana uyayazi lonto?(You are such an idiot, do you know that?)

Me:(sticking my tongue out) okusalayo you love me..so tell me more .

PG: okay so I kinda recorded a love song for the girl, pouring my heart out for her..

Me:(hugging my Chest making those puppy eyes)ncooh..that is so sweet and romantic, you really are your father's son.

PG:(chuckling) I can't disappoint. So I need you to please listen to it and tell me what do you think..

He gave me the headsets and I put it on..the beat plus his voice ,gosh I found myself tearing up..

Me:(taking them off) wow baby broe, if she's not moved by this, then she's not the one. This is too deep.

PG: thank you..I trust your judgement..

Me: I should be your manager son..and I won't come cheaper..

PG: you are such a gold digger!

I hit him with a pillow he stood up running and walked out of my room laughing. I just smiled and got into bed and took my book to read..my phone beeped and it was him " thanks again sis, I love you 🍷" my heart melted. I replied telling him I love him too and started on with my book....

This is season 3, since I'm still writing My foreigner; his love season one, I will ask to not be pressured and allow me to write on my own pace.

Welcome back babies!❤️